

ISLAMIC RESEARCH ASSOCIATION  
SERIES, No. 9

**A SHI'ITE CREED**

مکتبہ  
کتابی  
کتابی

ISLAMIC RESEARCH ASSOCIATION  
SERIES, No. 9

# A SHI'ITE CREED

A translation of *Risālatu'l-I'tiqādāt*  
of Muhammad b. 'Ali Ibn Bābawayhi al-Qummī  
known as Shaykh Ṣadūq

BY  
ASAFA A. A. FYZEE

AS 22

لِقَوْمٍ يَنْفَدِرُونَ

297-1  
Muhs Fyz

Published for the Islamic Research Association by

HUMPHREY MILFORD  
OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS  
LONDON NEW YORK BOMBAY

CALCUTTA MADRAS

1942.

J. L. F. Fyz

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL  
LIBRARY, NEW DELHI.

Acc. No. 2528.....

Date. 28. 2. 55

Call No. 297 1/ Mu. / Fy.

PRINTED IN INDIA BY G. E. BINGHAM  
AT THE BAPTIST MISSION PRESS  
41A LOWER CIRCULAR ROAD, CALCUTTA

## P R E F A C E

This is a translation of the *Risālatu'l-I'tiqādāti'l-Imāmīya* by the celebrated Shi'ite doctor Abū Ja'far Muḥammad b. 'Alī Ibni Bābawayhi al-Qummi, known as Shaykh Ṣadūq. He was the author of one of the "four books" and is universally regarded among the Ithnā 'Asharī Shi'a as a great authority; and the *Risāla* is one of the earliest Shi'ite creeds extant. It is therefore to be hoped that an exact rendering into English, with the addition of comparative notes and full indexes, will prove of value for the study of the historical evolution of the Shi'ite creed.

The text of the *Risāla* has unfortunately not yet been critically edited, but the Najaf and Delhi editions (N and D), compared with the Tehran edition (T), show that the text available, although not entirely satisfactory, is not too corrupt for the purposes of a translation. For the help of the student, I have also added textual suggestions and emendations. The notes are comparative and the most important of the parallel creeds and treatises are used; and while it is impossible in this respect to have access to complete references in Bombay, it is believed that the notes will furnish an essential *apparatus criticus* to the specialist, and may also prove of considerable interest to the layman. The indexes are sought to be made comprehensive; the subject index is arranged for easy reference to essential doctrines, and in the index of technical terms additional material for the general student of Arabic literature is also included.

Even in the preparation of so slight a volume, I owe a large debt of gratitude, which it is my pleasant duty to acknowledge. My sincere thanks are first of all due to my friend Shamsu'l-'Ulamā' Dr. U. M. Daudpota, Director of Public Instruction, Sind, for reading the manuscript of the translation, and making many corrections and suggestions; and while he is not in the least responsible for the mistakes that remain, he has undoubtedly

helped me to avoid many a pitfall. My gratitude is also due to Mr. W. Ivanow, who, as usual, helped me in a variety of ways. The Rāmpūr State Library generously lent me three volumes of the Arabic periodical *al-Murshid* (Baghdad), for which thanks are due to the authorities. I must also express my gratitude to the University of Bombay for making a generous grant towards the cost of publication and to the Islamic Research Association for agreeing to publish it in their admirable series.

A. A. A. F.

GOVERNMENT LAW COLLEGE

BOMBAY, 1

7 October 1941

## C O N T E N T S

		P A G E
Abbreviations .. .. ..	..	xi
<b>INTRODUCTION</b> .. .. ..	..	1
The author .. .. ..	..	6
His works .. .. ..	..	12-23

### ON THE BELIEFS OF THE IMĀMĪYA

Chapter 1—On the Unity of Allah .. .. ..	..	25
Chapter 2—On the Attributes (of His Essence and His Actions) .. .. ..	..	30
Chapter 3—On Responsibility .. .. ..	..	31
Chapter 4—On Human Actions .. .. ..	..	31
Chapter 5—On Constraint and Delegation .. .. ..	..	32
Chapter 6—On Allah's Intention and Will .. .. ..	..	33
Chapter 7—On Destiny and Decree .. .. ..	..	36
Chapter 8—On Man's Original Nature and True Guidance .. .. ..	..	38
Chapter 9—On Human Capacity .. .. ..	..	40
Chapter 10—On the Source of Creation .. .. ..	..	41
Chapter 11—On Disputation and Contention .. .. ..	..	43
Chapter 12—On the Tablet and the Pen .. .. ..	..	44
Chapter 13—On the Chair ( <i>Kursī</i> ) .. .. ..	..	45
Chapter 14—On the Throne (' <i>Arsh</i> ) .. .. ..	..	46
Chapter 15—On Souls and Spirits .. .. ..	..	48
Chapter 16—On Death .. .. ..	..	53
Chapter 17—On Questioning in the Grave .. .. ..	..	60
Chapter 18—On Resurrection .. .. ..	..	62
Chapter 19—On the Return after Death .. .. ..	..	66
Chapter 20—On the Pond .. .. ..	..	66
Chapter 21—On Intercession .. .. ..	..	67
Chapter 22—On the Promise and the Threat .. .. ..	..	68

	PAGE
Chapter 23—On What is Written against the Slave ..	69
Chapter 24—On Allah's Justice ..	70
Chapter 25—On Purgatory ..	71
Chapter 26—On the Bridge ..	71
Chapter 27—On the Passes which are on the Road to the Gathering-Place of Resurrection ..	72
Chapter 28—On the Reckoning and the Scales ..	74
Chapter 29—On the Garden and the Fire ..	77
Chapter 30—On the Descent of Revelation ..	82
Chapter 31—On the Revelation of the Qur'ān ..	83
Chapter 32—On the Qur'ān ..	84
Chapter 33—On the Extent of the Qur'ān ..	85
Chapter 34—On the Prophets, Apostles, Imāms, and Angels ..	89
Chapter 35—On the Number of Prophets and Vicegerents	92
Chapter 36—On Infallibility ..	99
Chapter 37—On Excess and Delegation ..	100
Chapter 38—On Evil-doers ..	105
Chapter 39—On Dissimulation ..	110
Chapter 40—On the Ancestors of the Prophet ..	112
Chapter 41—On the Alids ..	113
Chapter 42—On the Reports, Detailed and Summary ..	116
Chapter 43—On Prohibition and Permission ..	116
Chapter 44—On Medicine ..	117
Chapter 45—On Divergent Traditions ..	118—128

## INDEXES

A. Qur'ānic verses .. .. ..	129
B. Subjects .. .. ..	131
C. Names and Titles .. .. ..	137
D. Technical Terms .. .. ..	141

## A B B R E V I A T I O N S

Affifi: *The Mystical Philosophy of Muhyid Dīn-Ibnul 'Arabī* by A. E. Affifi. Cambridge, 1939.

BHA: *al-Bābū'l-Hādī 'Ashar* by Ḥasan b. Yūsuf b. 'Alī Ibnu'l-Muṭahhar al-Hilli, with a commentary by Miqdād-i-Fādil. Trans. by W. M. Miller. London, 1928 (Royal Asiatic Society, Oriental Translation Fund, N.S., Vol. XXIX).

Browne: *A Descriptive Catalogue of the Oriental MSS. belonging to the late H. G. Browne* by R. A. Nicholson. Cambridge, 1932.

Browne, *Lit. His.:*

- i—*A Literary History of Persia, from the earliest times until Firdawṣī*. London, 1909.
- ii—do. *from Firdawṣī to Sa'dī*. London, 1906.
- iii—*Persian Literature under Tartar Dominion (A.D. 1265–1502)*. Cambridge, 1920.
- iv—*Persian Literature in Modern Times (A.D. 1500–1924)*. Cambridge, 1924.

D: The Delhi edition of the *Risālatu'l-I'tiqādāt. Hadya-i Ja'fariya*, being a translation of the 'Aqā'īd of Shaykh Ṣuddūq (sic) by Muḥammad I'jāz Ḥasan Badāyūnī. Arabic text, with Urdu translation in parallel columns on the same page. Delhi, 1347 (2nd ed.).

Donaldson: *The Shi'ite Religion* by D. M. Donaldson. London, 1933 (Luzac's Oriental Religions Series, vol. VI).

EI: *Encyclopaedia of Islām* by M. Th. Houtsma and others. Eng. ed. Leiden-London, 1913–1934.

—, *Sup.*: Supplement to the above. Leiden-London, 1938.

FC: *A Creed of the Fatimids* by W. Ivanow. Bombay, 1936.

GAL: *Geschichte des arabischen Litteratur* by C. Brockelmann. 2 vols., i, Weimar, 1898; ii, Berlin, 1902.

—, *Sup.*: Supplement, vol. i, 1937; vol. ii, 1938. Brill, Leiden.

Jeffery: *The Foreign Vocabulary of the Qur'ān* by A. Jeffery. Baroda, 1938 (Gaekwad's Oriental Series, vol. LXXIX).

Kashf: *Kashf al-Ḥujub wal Astār 'an Asmā' al-Kutub wal Asfār* or Bibliography of Shi'a Literature by I'jāz Ḥusayn al-Kantūrī. Ed. M. Hidayat Husain. Calcutta, Part I, 1912; Part II, 1935 (Bibliotheca Indica Series).

*KP*: *Kalami Pir*, a treatise on Ismaili Doctrine, also (wrongly) called *Haft-Babi Shah Sayyid Nasir*. Edited and translated by W. Ivanow. Bombay, 1935 (Islamic Research Association Series, No. 4).

*Lane*: Lane's *Lexicon*. 8 parts. London, 1863-1893.

*Macdonald*: *Development of Muslim Theology, Jurisprudence and Constitutional Theory* by D. B. Macdonald. New York-London, 1903 (Routledge's Semitic Series, vol. IX).

*MB*: *Majma'u'l-Bahrayn*, an Arabic (Shi'ite) lexicon, by Fakhru'd-din b. Md. b. Ahmad an-Najafi. Tehran, 1321.

*MC*: *The Muslim Creed* by A. J. Wensinck. Cambridge, 1932.

*MSS*: The manuscript catalogues are referred to as in *GAL*.

*Mur.*: *al-Murshid*, an Arabic periodical published at Baghdad, 1925/1344 onwards. (Vols. I-III were made available to me by the kindness of the Rāmpūr State Library. They contain the text of the *Taṣḥīḥu'l-I'tiqādāt* of Shaykh Mufid. See *Taṣ* below.)

*Mus(tadrak)*: *Mustadraku'l-Wasā'il wa Mustanba'u'l-Masā'il* by Mirzā Ḥusayn b. Md. at-Taqlī an-Nūrī at-Ṭabarī. 3 vols. Tehran, vol. i, 1318/1900; vol. ii, 1319/1901; vol. iii, 1321/1903.

*N*: The Najaf edition of the *Risālatu'l-I'tiqādāt*. The text is to be found in a volume of 224 pages, 4 by 6½ inches, containing a collection of the following treatises: (1) *an-Nāfi' Yawmi'l-Ḥashr fi Sharḥ Bābi'l-Ḥādī 'Ashar* by Miqdād-i-Fādil, pp. 1-92; (2) *Risālatu'l-I'tiqādāt* by Shaykh Ṣadūq, pp. 93-163; (3) *Su'ālāt al-Ma'mūn 'anī'r-Ridā 'an ba'd Āyī'l-Qur'ān*, pp. 164-200; and (4) *Risāla fi Ādābi'l-Muta'allimīn*, pp. 201-224. Najaf, *Majba'atū'l-Murtadāviya*, 1343 A.H.

*Najāshī*: *Kitābu'r-Rijāl* by Abū'l-Abbās Ahmad b. 'Alī b. al-'Abbās an-Najāshī. Bombay, 1317 A.H.

*Qur'an*: The references are to Fluegel's edition. The renderings are mostly from Marmaduke Pickthall, *The Meaning of the Glorious Koran*, London, 1930.

*Sipahsalar*: *Fihristi Kitābkhāna-i Dānishkada-i Ma'qūl wa Manqūl dar Madrasa-i 'Alī Sipahsalar*. Vol. I (Persian and Arabic MSS.) by Ibn Yūsuf Shirāzī, in Persian. Tehran, 1313-1315 A.H.

*T*: The Tehran edition of the *Risālatu'l-I'tiqādāt*. It is to be found in the following collection: (1) *an-Nāfi' Yawmi'l-Ḥashr* (commentary on *al-Bābu'l-Ḥādī 'Ashar*), pp. 1-71; (2) *I'tiqādāt* of Shaykh Ṣadūq, pp. 71-124; (3) on the margins, *I'tiqādāt* of Majlisī; (4) *Su'ālāt al-Ma'mūn 'anī'r-Ridā*, pp. 125-149; and a few minor *rasā'il*, pp. 150-157. Tehran, 1274 A.H. (see pp. 69 and 124).

*Taṣ*: *Taṣḥīḥu'l-I'tiqādāt*, a commentary and critique of the *I'tiqādāt* of Shaykh Ṣadūq, by Muhammad b. Muhammad b. an-Nu'mān al-Ḥārithī, known as Shaykh Mufid. The text was edited by

Hibatu'd-din Shīrāzī in *al-Murshid*, Baghdad. (The editor explains (*Mur.* i. 78) that the text was edited from a rare MS. belonging to الراجا ابو جعفر (ibid., iii. 283, n. 1), to which he had access when travelling in India in the year 1331 A.H. Notes have also been added by the editor. As explained, however, the complete text was not available to me; some fascicles of the periodical are not to be found in the three bound volumes preserved in the Rāmpūr State Library, see below, p. 5.)

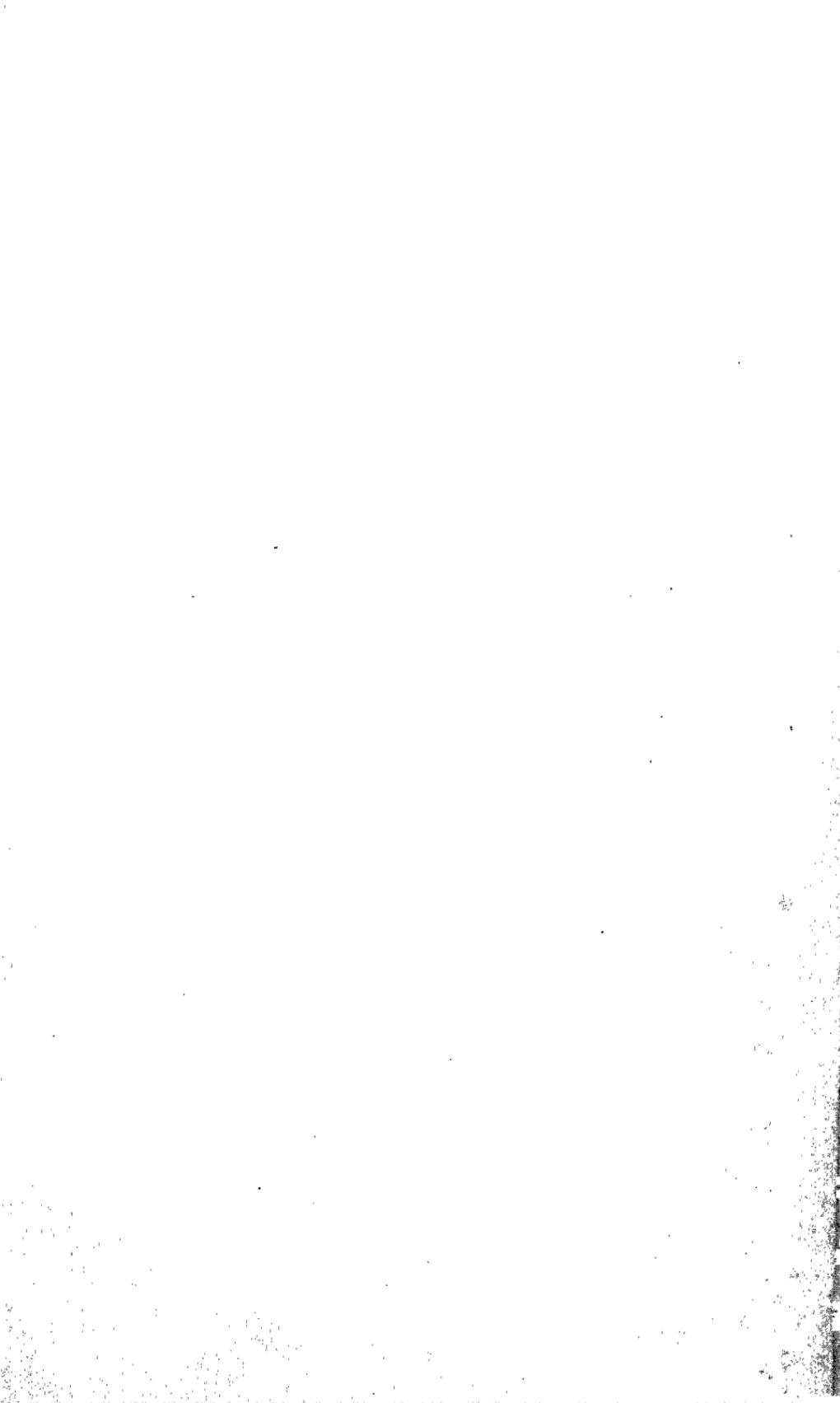
*Taw.*: *Kitābu't-Tawḥid* by Md. b. 'Alī Ibn Bābawayhi al-Qummī, known as Shaykh Ṣadūq. Tehran (?), 1285/1869.

Tehran: *Catalogue des Manuscrits Persans et Arabes de la Bibliothèque du Madjless* par Y. Etessami. Tehran, 1933. (*Fihristi Kitābkhāna-i Majlisi Shūrā-i Millī az Yūsuf I'tiṣāmī*. Tehran, 1311.)

Ṭūsī: *Fihrist Kutubī' sh-Shī'a* by Md. b. Ḥasan b. 'Alī at-Ṭūsī (Tusy's List of Shy'ah Books and 'Alam al-Hoda's Notes on Shy'ah Biography), ed. by A. Spranger, 'Abd al-Ḥaqq and Gholam Qadir. Calcutta, 1855 (Bib. Ind. Ser.).

*Was(ā'il)*: *Wasā'ilu'sh-Shī'a* by Md. b. Ḥasan al-Hurr al-Āmili. 3 vols. Tehran, 1323/1905.

Wensinck, *Handbook*: *A Handbook of Early Muhammadan Tradition* by A. J. Wensinck. Leiden, 1927.



## INTRODUCTION

While it cannot be denied that within recent years there has been a considerable increase in our general knowledge regarding Islam, it must also be admitted that not any appreciable advance has been made in our knowledge of Shi'itic history, philosophy and law. Curiously enough researches of considerable significance have been made regarding Ismailism—a small fraction of the Shi'a; and the works of L. Massignon, W. Ivanow and P. Kraus, in particular, have opened up new vistas and indicated new lines of advance. But with regard to the most important and numerous group of the Shi'a, the Ithnā 'Ashariya, the position has remained more or less stationary.

Isr. Friedlaender,<sup>1</sup> writing in 1907, complains of the paucity of our knowledge in this respect, and he says that Shi'ism is known to us in the roughest outline,<sup>2</sup> and the religious tendencies are not known at all. One of the difficulties according to him is its heterogeneous character; for it is not easy to analyse its peculiar component parts, drawn as they are from such widely divergent sources as Babylonian, Persian, Jewish and Muslim.<sup>3</sup> Professor E. G. Browne, writing in 1924, deplores the lack of our knowledge, particularly in regard to the Shi'itic creed, and he advocates a comparative study.<sup>4</sup> Later, discussing the *Haqqul-Yaqīn* of Muhammad Bāqir-i-Majlisī, a very important theological work, composed in 1109/1698 and printed at Tehran in 1241/1825, he regrets the lack of leisure which prevented him from completing its French rendering begun by the late M. A. de Biberstein Kazimirski; and he further adds that the importance of it would be great "since we still possess no comprehensive and authoritative statement of Shi'a doctrine in any European language".<sup>5</sup> Still later, in 1934, R. Strothmann, writing in the *Encyclopaedia of Islām*, while giving a brief account of the

<sup>1</sup> "The Heterodoxies of the Shiites in the presentation of Ibn Hazm," *JAOS*, vol. 28, pp. 1-80; and a commentary, vol. 29, pp. 1-183.

<sup>2</sup> *JAOS*, 28, 3.

<sup>4</sup> *Pers. Lit.*, iv. 402.

<sup>3</sup> *ibid.*, 4.

<sup>5</sup> *ibid.*, 418.

Shi'a,<sup>1</sup> laconically remarks that "there is no thorough account of the Shi'a". The position during the last seven years has not improved, despite the appearance of works which throw light on certain aspects of Shi'ism.<sup>2</sup>

The publication of the late Professor A. J. Wensinck's *The Muslim Creed* (Cambridge, 1932) marked an epoch, and after its appearance it was generally felt that having performed the task in a masterly fashion, he had clearly indicated a new approach to the problem, and indeed pointed the way to another aspect of study—the examination of the Shi'ite creed. Professor Wensinck had restricted himself to the early Sunnite authorities, and while studying his lucid and methodical presentation of the subject, we see that the picture is incomplete and can only be completed by editing and translating a number of Shi'ite creeds, thus paving the way for a historical and systematic study of the subject.

The creed of Islam cannot be understood by the study of the "Sunnite" element only; to this must also be added the inquiry into the Shi'ite counterpart. The uses of such a study are many, but three different aspects may here be stressed: such a study would clarify many historical questions; it would give us an insight into theological controversies—for, these are not always barren, fanatical and personal, but indicative of general trends of thought; and finally, it would tend to the solution of the problem of legal distinctions that puzzle some of the foremost jurists.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *EI*, iv. 350 at 357.

<sup>2</sup> For example, *Die Zwölfer Schi'a* by R. Strothmann, Leipzig, 1926; *al-Bābu'l-Hādī 'Ashar*, tr. W. M. Miller, R.A.S., London, 1928; Hasan b. Müsā an-Nawbakhti, *Firaqūsh-Shi'a*, ed. H. Ritter, Istanbul, 1931; *The Shi'ite Religion* by D. M. Donaldson, London, 1933, to mention some of them. The best general accounts of the Shi'ite faith are to be found in E. G. Browne, *Per. Lit.*, iv. 354 sqq. and R. Strothmann, *Enc. of Islam*, iv. 350-358, s.v. Shi'a.

<sup>3</sup> In this connection an eminent authority on Muslim Law in India, F. B. Tyabji, has made the interesting suggestion that the difference between the Shi'ite and Sunnite law of inheritance can only be explained on the hypothesis that the Shi'ite interpretation came from the Prophet himself through 'Ali, and was not, as is too often assumed, the creation of later minds. (*Aryam Path* for Feb. 1940, 69-70).

Our knowledge regarding the Shi'ite faith is generally derived from three well-known heresiologists whose published work is easily accessible. These in chronological order are: Baghdādī (d. 429/1038);<sup>1</sup> Ibn Hazm (d. 456/1054);<sup>2</sup> and Shahrastāni (d. 548/1153).<sup>3</sup> Of these Shahrastāni is the best known, for it was published early; later, Ibn Hazm in the rendering of Friedlaender, came also to be fairly well known; the earliest authority, Baghdādī, is for various reasons the least known. All of these are devout Sunnīs, convinced of the pernicious errors of the *rawāfiḍ*, the Shi'a. With such an attitude, it is impossible for them to be just or fair to the Shi'ite point of view. One may as well expect a sober account of the Church of England from a Catholic priest. The result is that the earlier orientalists believed that Shi'ism was a pernicious corruption of Islam, concocted mainly, if not solely, for political reasons.<sup>4</sup> Also that the Sunnī faith is the "orthodox" faith and the Shi'ite, the "heterodox" one.

Whether Shi'ism was a deliberate corruption of Islam or whether it was one of its early forms is now hardly a debatable question. All the evidence which has come to light in recent years goes against the corruption theory; it is a form of Islam of interest from various points of view and it should be studied in its historical setting principally through Shi'itic sources, in comparison with all the other material available. Sunnī scholars of the olden days had neither the knowledge nor the will to give a purely objective account of the Shi'a faith; this is a factor which must impel one to go to the Shi'itic originals themselves. As to "orthodoxy", a minority, however small, may well have retained a very close touch with the original tradition;

<sup>1</sup> Baghdādī, *al-Faq̄ bayn al-Firaq*, ed. Md. Badr, Cairo, 1910; trans. in *Moslem Schisms and Sects*, Pt. I, by K. C. Seelye, Columbia University Press, 1920; Pt. II, by A. S. Halkin, Tel-Aviv, 1935; a *Mukhtaṣar* by 'Abd ar-Rāziq ar-Ras'āni was ed. by P. Hitti, Cairo, 1924.

<sup>2</sup> Israel Friedlaender, op. cit. The second volume contains a commentary and very valuable materials for the study of Shi'ism.

<sup>3</sup> Shahrastāni, *al-Milal wa'n-Nihāl*, ed. Cureton, London, 1846; reprint, Leipzig, 1923.

<sup>4</sup> Isr. Friedlaender, *JAOS*, 28, 2.

the majority, however preponderent, may conceivably have lost it in the stress of political conflicts. While it is not at all easy to determine how much weight is to be given to the plausible doctrine of the Shi'a that 'Ali, by virtue of his relationship and affinity to the Prophet, had a better insight into religion than others, it is also not possible to dismiss contemptuously the possibility of the personal religious tradition of the Prophet, at least in some important matters, being carefully handed down to the Imāms of the House of the Prophet, the people who undoubtedly had the best opportunity of knowing the true interpretation of many a principle of Islam.<sup>1</sup> Hence a historical, objective, critical and comparative study of the Shi'itic sources is greatly to be desired.

In order to obtain an insight into the Shi'ite religion in general, we must first of all look at their creed. For this purpose we must go to their own authorities and find that we have only two sources available to us. The first is *al-Bābu'l-Hādī 'Ashar* by Hasan b. Yūsuf b. 'Alī b. al-Muṭahhar al-Hilli, known as 'Allāma-i-Hilli (died, 726/1326). The original text, together with its commentary *an-Nāfi' Yawmi'l-Hashr* by Miqdād-i-Fādil al-Hilli (eighth century A.H.), was translated by W. M. Miller, and published by the Royal Asiatic Society, London, in 1928. This little treatise is a very popular creed and has practically superseded every other in modern times. The second creed, of which a brief summary is before us, is the *'Aqā'idu'sh-Shī'a* by 'Alī Asghar b. 'Alī Akbar, composed in the middle of the 19th century A.D. This is a book of 438 pages and Professor E. G. Browne gives an admirable summary in his *Persian Literature in Modern Times* (381-402). He says: "Such in outline is the Shi'a creed of contemporary Persia in its crudest and most popular form. It would be interesting to trace the evolution of that creed from the earliest times of Islam, to compare (so far as the available materials allow) the historical with the legendary Imāms, and to contrast in detail the beliefs, both doctrinal and eschatological, of the Shi'a and the Sunnis" (p. 402).

---

<sup>1</sup> W. Ivanow has made some pertinent observations on the question of orthodoxy and heterodoxy in *JBBRAS* for 1940, 52.

These appear to be the only Shi'itic creeds studied in their entirety, but much valuable material may also be found in works like Nawbakhti's *Firaqu'sh-Shi'a* and *The Shi'ite Religion* by D. M. Donaldson (London, 1933). In chapters xxix, xxx and xxxi he has given interesting quotations from Majlisi's *Hayātū'l-Qulūb*. Thus it will be apparent that a systematic rendering of Ibn Bābawayhi's creed constitutes a great advance on our present knowledge. He was one of the greatest Shaykhs of the Shi'a—the author of one of the FOUR BOOKS—and having died in 381/991, he preceded by about 350 years 'Allāma-i-Hillī, whose *al-Bābu'l-Hādī 'Ashar* is now a recognized classic. It is one of the earliest Ithnā 'Asharī creeds and, therefore, of great value for the study of the historical evolution of the Shi'ite creed.

For the purposes of my translation I have used two printed editions, the Najaf and the Delhi editions, indicated N and D respectively, and consulted the Tehran edition, T. The figures in square brackets [ ] indicate the pages of the Najaf edition, which is on the whole the most correct, although D gives many interesting additions and corrections in the later part. D is accompanied by an Urdu rendering, which, despite some errors, is fairly useful; but the most admirable feature is the translator's notes. He has apparently made good use of the *Taṣḥīḥu'l-Itqādāt* of Shaykh Mufid, which was printed in the periodical *al-Murshid*, Baghdad, and a MS. copy whereof exists in the Asafiya Library, Hyderabad. I regret I have not been able to study this work in its entirety, although the authorities of the Rampur State Library were kind enough to allow me the loan of those parts of *al-Murshid* which are preserved in their library, but which unhappily contain a part only of the text of *Taṣḥīḥ*.

It was my intention originally to add a systematic introduction to this translation, giving a comparative and historical account of the Shi'ite creed. A deeper study of the subject, however, has made me realize my own limitations and instilled diffidence. It appears to me that there are numerous works, at present not available to me, which must be carefully studied and analysed before such a task can profitably be undertaken. The only thing I have been able to do is to add a certain number

of notes for facilitating a comparative study. *The Muslim Creed* was quite adequate for the Sunnī doctrine; but for Shī'ite dogmas, apart from *al-Bābu'l-Hādī 'Ashar*, no other creed was available. Between the alternatives of giving no references at all, or of drawing attention to some of the salient points from such doctrinal works of Ismā'īlism as *Kalāmi Pīr* and *The Fatimid Creed* both by W. Ivanow, I have chosen the latter course, in the hope that it may help the comparative study of Shī'ite dogma. References to Ibnu'l-'Arabī's doctrine have been added as they form the basis of many Sūfi and mystical works.

### *The Author and his Works*

Shaykh Ṣadūq Ibni Bābawayhi is universally regarded among the Ithnā 'Asharī Shī'a as one of their foremost doctors and traditionists. Professor E. G. Browne, in discussing the founders of the Shī'a theology, says "The most important of these earlier divines are 'the three Muhammads', al-Kulaynī (Muhammad b. Ya'qūb, d. 329/941), Ibni Bābawayhi (Muhammad b. 'Alī b. Müsā, d. 381/991-2) and the already mentioned Tūsī (Muhammad b. Hasan, d. 460/1067). Of these the first composed the *Kāfi*, the second *Man lā Yādūruhu'l-faqīh* (a title which approximates in sense to our familiar 'Every man his own Lawyer'), and the third the *Istibsār* and the *Tahdhību'l-Āhkām*, which are known collectively amongst the Shī'a as 'the Four Books' (*al-Kutubu'l-arba'a*) and of which the full particulars will be found in the above-mentioned *Kashfu'l-Hujub*".<sup>1</sup>

Considering the high repute in which he is held, the early times in which he lived, the great influence he had on later theologians and traditionists, and the numerous works which are

<sup>1</sup> *Persian Literature in Modern Times*, iv. 358-359. He adds that more modern times have also produced their "three Muhammads", namely, Md. b. Ḥasan b. 'Alī... al-Hurr al-Āmilī (author of *Amalu'l-Āmil*), d. 1033/1623-24; Md. Ibnu'l-Murtadā, commonly known as Mullā Muhsin-i-Fayd, d. 1090/1679; and Md. Bāqir-i-Majlisī, died 1111/1699-1700. The first wrote the *Wasā'il*, the second the *Wāfi* and the third the *Bihāru'l-Anwār*, which constitute the "three books" of the later times. These seven works are the most important works on Shī'a theology, jurisprudence and tradition.

attributed to him, it is very unfortunate that the earliest works which give an account of his life are extremely brief and give us no indication whatever of his character, his studies, his travels and his life. Thus, at the end of our enquiry, we are faced with the problem of writing the account of a man, the whole of whose life is summarized by Tūsī in about 4 lines (Tusy, *List*, 204) and by Najāshī in 3 lines at the beginning and 2 lines at the end (*Rijāl*, 276, 279). Thus Browne is fully justified in observing that "The older 'Books of the Men' (*Kutubu'r-Rijāl*), such as the works of at-Tūsī and an-Najāshī, are generally very jejune, and suited for reference rather than reading".<sup>1</sup>

The two earliest sources for the life of Ibn Bābawayhi are *Shaykhū'l-Tā'ifa* Muḥammad b. Ḥasan b. 'Alī at-Tūsī, b. 385/995, d. 460/1067.<sup>2</sup> His *Fihrist* was published by A. Sprenger in the *Bibliotheca Indica*, Calcutta, in 1853–55, under the title of Tusy's *List of Shy'ah Books and 'Alam al-Hoda's Notes on Shy'ah Biography*. It has always been considered an early and reliable authority.<sup>3</sup>

The second source is Ahmad b. 'Alī an-Najāshī, b. 372/982, d. 450/1063.<sup>4</sup> His *Kitābu'r-Rijāl* (Bombay, 1317/1899-1900) is a very useful book of reference, and is particularly exhaustive as regards lists of works written by each author. On a comparison of these two, Najāshī will be found to be the better and more detailed work, as has been pointed out by Sprenger.<sup>5</sup> Najāshī gives a very comprehensive list of the Shaykh's works.

The later works of reference, like *Qīṣaṣu'l-'Ulamā'*, *Amālu'l-Āmil*, *Muntahā'l-Maqāl* and others repeat with certain additions the information given in the earlier works. It is therefore safe to treat Tūsī and Najāshī as the basic authorities.

Of later works, I have made the fullest use of *Rawdātu'l-Jannāt* by Muḥammad Bāqir b. Ḥājjī Zaynu'l-Ābidin al-Mūsawī al-Khwānsārī (lithographed Tehran, 1306/1888). This

<sup>1</sup> *ibid.*, 358.

<sup>2</sup> *EI*, iv. 982; Browne, *Lit. His.*, iv. 405.

<sup>3</sup> See Sprenger's Preface and Browne's valuable discussion of biographical authorities, *Lit. His.*, iv. 355–358.

<sup>4</sup> Browne, *loc. cit.*

<sup>5</sup> Preface to Tusy's *List*, pp. 1 and 2.

is the most scholarly and comprehensive of modern authorities, and as far as can be ascertained from the Imāmī scholars themselves, they place great reliance on it. The account of Shaykh Ṣadūq, although it extends to four pages (557-560), consists mainly of a discussion of his views, opinions on his greatness as a doctor of theology, his soundness (being *thīqa*) as a traditionist, and various other matters, without giving us details of his life or glimpses of his character.<sup>1</sup>

With regard to his writings, according to Professor E. G. Browne, the *Qīṣaṣu'l-'Ulamā'* attributes 189 (iv. 377, 405) and *Najāši* 193 works to the Shaykh Ṣadūq (*EI*, ii. 366). Tūsī however mentions 43 and *Rawḍātu'l-Jannāt*, 17 only. In addition to these authorities, such manuscript catalogues as were available in Bombay have been consulted by me and, after dealing with his biography, the results carefully stated.

Abū Ja'far Muḥammad b. 'Alī b. al-Ḥusayn b. Mūsā Ibn Bābawayhi<sup>2</sup> al-Qummī is generally known as *ash-Shaykh*

<sup>1</sup> Of modern accounts of his life, the two following may be consulted with advantage, by Hidayat Husain in *EI*, ii. 265, and by D. M. Donaldson, *The Shi'ite Religion*, London, 1933, pp. 285-286. See also Būhār Catalogue, ii. 51, and R. Strothmann in *EI*, iv. 354.

<sup>2</sup> The Shaykh is known generally by the title of Shaykh Ṣadūq or by his name, Ibn Bābawayhi. This is an interesting compound, made up of the word *bāb* and the termination *-awayhi*, which originally was *-ūya* and earlier *-ōē*. Wright, *Arab. Gram.*, i. 244d, gives several examples of names such as سِبُوَيْهُ، بُوَيْهُ، عَمْرُو بْيَهُ، نَفْطَلِيَهُ، the last of which is dealt with as *Sēbōē* by Justi, *Iranisches Namenbuch*, 293, the newer form being *Sibūyeh*. *Bābōē*, *Bābūya*, and thence the current arabicized *Babawayhi* is discussed by Justi, *ibid.*, 55, as being both Iranian and Semitic. The termination *-ōē*, *-ūya*, arabicized into *-a-way-hi* (أَوَّيْهِ) is probably a double diminutive, as my friend Mr. W. Ivanow explains. According to him *-ūya* = *u+a(k)*; and such cases are to be found in Persian: *mardākāk*, *mardākā*, *zandākāk*, etc., also *kuchuluk*, *kuchulu*. Further philological discussion will be found in P. Horn, *Neupersische Schriftsprache in Grund. Iran. Phil.*, vol. I, Pt. 2, pp. 184-186 and Nöldeke, *Persische Studien*, i. 4 sqq.

The word *bāb* is apparently of Semitic origin and may mean "gate". The compound "a small gate" is however not intelligible. It may be sug-

as-*Sadūq*. His place of birth is not mentioned either by Tūsī or by Najāshī, but Donaldson says that he was born at Khorasan.<sup>1</sup> In 355/966 he went to Baghdad, apparently from Khorasan, and died at Rayy in 381/991.<sup>2</sup> Ahlwardt in the *Berlin Catalogue* says that the date of death is 391/1001,<sup>3</sup> and this is followed by some authors. There is however no sufficient authority for this date.

Of his life and character we know nothing; but of his birth a most entertaining legend is preserved. According to Tūsī and Najāshī,<sup>4</sup> when in 'Irāq, his father 'Ali b. al-Husayn Ibn Bābawayhi al-Qummī (d. 329/940-41) met Abū'l-Qāsim Husayn b. Rūh, who was the third of the four agents of the Hidden Imām during the period of 73 years, 256-339 A.H.,<sup>5</sup> and asked him several questions. Thereafter 'Ali wrote a letter to him through 'Ali b. Ja'far b. al-Aswad<sup>6</sup> in order that the letter might be delivered to the Hidden Imām. In the letter 'Ali asked for a son, to which he received a reply from Husayn b. Rūh that "We have prayed to Allah for it on your behalf and you will be rewarded with two goodly sons". Afterwards two sons were born of a slave girl (*min umm walad*), Abū Ja'far Muhammad (the celebrated Shaykh Ṣadūq) and Abū 'Abdi'l-lāh

---

gested that it has reference to the well-known *hadīth*: أَنَّ مَدِينَةَ الْعَلَى مَدِينَةُ الْعَلَى بَابُ الْعَلَى، so that Ṣadūq is the "small", while his father 'Ali is the "great" gate. This however does not accord with the fact that 'Ali, his father, also bore the name of Ibn Bābawayhi. The real reason of the appellation, as is so often the case, is lost in obscurity and no useful purpose would be served in making ingenious guesses. Similar compounds are Hamdūya, Ṣadrūya, Hasanūya, Dhikrūya, etc. Also عَلَى (RJ, 236), قَوْلَى (Kashfū'l-Hujub, No. 2312) and مَاجِلَى (Kashf, p. 33; Najāshī, 184).

<sup>1</sup> *The Shi'ite Religion*, 286. Date of birth not mentioned, Bankipore Cat., V, Pt. i, p. 183.

<sup>2</sup> Tūsy, *Fihrist*, 304; Najāshī, *Rijāl*, 276, 279. For mistakes regarding date of death, see Bankipore Catalogue, V, Pt. i, p. 183.

<sup>3</sup> Ahlwardt, Nos. 1269, 2721, etc.

<sup>4</sup> Tūsī, 218; Najāshī, 184-185.

<sup>5</sup> Donaldson, 285.

<sup>6</sup> According to *Rawḍātū'l-Jannāt*, the correct name is Abū Ja'far Md. b. 'Ali al-Aswad, 378, 379.

Husayn. It is reported from his younger brother Ḥusayn that Muḥammad used to pride himself on the circumstances of his birth saying أَنَا وَلِت بَدْعَةُ صَاحِبِ الْأَمْرِ وَيَفْتَخِرُ بِذَلِكَ.

The same story is reported in *Rawdātu'l-Jannāt* (378) with certain variations in two different versions: (1) Abū Ja'far Md. b. 'Alī al-Aswad (*not* 'Alī b. Ja'far al-Aswad, as in Tūsī and Najāshī) was asked to request Rūḥ to ask the Imām, and no letter was written. (2) Abū Ja'far asked Rūḥ and was informed after three days that he had prayed for 'Alī and the prayer was accepted.

'Alī had three sons, Muḥammad (Sh. Ṣadūq), Ḥasan and Husayn. 'Alī was a theologian and divine and taught Shaykh Ṣadūq.<sup>1</sup> Muḥammad, the eldest son, was the most famous of all. The second brother Ḥasan was devoted to piety and did not generally mix with the people.<sup>2</sup> The third and youngest brother was Husayn, also a well-known jurist and theologian.

Shaykh Ṣadūq apparently taught at Baghdad and being a contemporary of the Buwayhid Ruknū'd-Dawla, entered into controversies at his behest. He was well known for his knowledge, memory, justice, intelligence and reliability; and he is universally regarded as a pillar of religion. His authority was accepted by Ibn Tā'ūs and Shaykh Sulaymān among others. Muḥammad Bāqir-i-Majlīsī (who according to E. G. Browne was "one of the greatest, most powerful and most fanatical *mujtahids* of the Ṣafawī period", the well-known author of *Bihāru'l-Anwār*, an encyclopaedic work in 25 volumes, d. 1111/1699-1700; see *Pers. Lit.*, iv. 403, 409-10) says that his traditions were declared as reliable by a decision of a number of 'Ulamā'.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *RJ*, 372<sub>22</sub>.

<sup>2</sup> *RJ*, 559<sub>10-11</sub>—مشتغل بالبادرة والرهد و لا يختلط بالناس—.

<sup>3</sup> *RJ*, 557 sqq. According to Tūsī (304):

كَانَ جَلِيلًا حَافِظًا لِلْأَحَادِيثِ بَصِيرًا بِالرِّجَالِ نَاقِدًا لِلْأَخْبَارِ ۖ

لَمْ يُرَفِّ الْقَمَيْنِ مِثْلَهُ فِي حَفْظِهِ وَكَثْرَةِ عِلْمِهِ، لَهُ نَحْوُ ثَلَاثَةِ مَسْتَفٍ ۖ

This tradition is repeated by all later authorities like *RJ*, *Lu'lū'atu'l-Bahrayn*, etc.

Strange to say, however, that some have doubted his authority and reliability.<sup>1</sup> In reality this is not the correct view and the author of *Rawdātu'l-Jannāt* refutes such errant opinions in very spirited language.

With regard to the works of Shaykh Ṣadūq, it has already been pointed out that Najāshī mentions 193, the *Qīṣāṣu'l-'Ulamā'* 189, Tūsī 43 and *Rawdātu'l-Jannāt* 17 works. The last-named work says that he is the author of 300 books (558<sub>3</sub>); this clearly follows the tradition of earlier authorities. This wide divergence in number, although it cannot be fully explained, may be due to the fact that the titles mentioned by Najāshī may, in a large number of cases, be called the chapters of a book, rather than books themselves. It is also possible that in some instances the same book may have been known by two different names.

In the lists below the first consists of the books which are known and extant, and the other is an alphabetical list of names taken from Najāshī. This is given in full as it is possible that works hitherto not known may yet come to light.

The two earliest authorities are Tūsī and Najāshī, and they give the following authorities for their statements:

Tūsī. After mentioning 43 works, he says that there also exist smaller works, the names of which are not known to him (p. 305). His sources are a number of people, chief among whom are (1) Shaykh Abū 'Abdi'l-lāh Muhammad b. Md. b. Nu'mān, (2) al-Husayn b. 'Ubaydu'l-lāh, (3) Abū'l-Hasan Ja'far b. al-Hasan b. Khaska (?) al-Qummi, and (4) Abū Zakariyā' Md. b. Sulaymān al-Hamrānī, all of whom were personally in touch with the author.

NAJĀSHI. He says that some of the books were actually read by his father 'Alī b. Ahmad b. al-'Abbās an-Najāshī with the author, and the rest were specifically mentioned by him (the father) when he heard of them at Baghdad. The father was given an *ijāza* by Sh. Ṣadūq to teach all the books (p. 279).

It is very interesting to observe that Khawānsārī in *Rawdātu'l-Jannāt*, after mentioning 17 works, observes that "the rest of the works have not come down to us" (558<sub>5</sub>).

<sup>1</sup> *RJ*, 558<sub>24-25</sub>.

It will be observed that a full reference to all manuscript catalogues has not been possible in Bombay. Hence only a selection from the most important catalogues has been made. Nevertheless, it is hoped that a clear idea of the extant works of the Shaykh can be obtained from List A, and List B may be used for reference as *Najāshī* is not always available and an alphabetical arrangement may facilitate reference. The manuscript catalogues used are indicated by abbreviations which can easily be identified with the help of Brockelmann's *Geschichte der arabischen Litteratur* and the recent *Supplement*, where full references are to be found. The only exceptions are Sipahsalar, Browne and one or two others, which are included in the list of abbreviations.

#### A. Works known and preserved

##### 1. كتاب (رسالة) الإعتقادات—*Risālatu'l-I'tiqādāt*.

Not mentioned by *Tūsī* or *Najāshī*. *Kashf*, 239; *RJ*, No. 14.

**Text.** *GAL*, i. 187; *GAL*, Sup. i. 322 (7) numerous references. According to Brockelmann "Eng. Trans. by A. A. A. Fyzee, 1932" (!); Browne, p. 16; Brit. Mus., 851; Cod. Br. Mus., add. 19,623; Rieu, 385; Pet. Am., 61; Iv. ASB. Ar., 828, 829, 830; Berlin, 1944.

**Lith.** Najaf 1343/1924-25 (together with three other *risālas*), pp. 234 = N; Delhi (with Urdu trans. by Md. I'jāz Husayn), Ithnā 'Asharī Press, 1347 (1st ed. 1332), *sub nom.* <sup>عليه الرحمة</sup> هدية جعفری ترجمة عقائد شیخ صدوق (*sic*), pp. 127 = D; Tehran (together with 4 other *risālas*), 1274 = T.

**Persian Translation.** Iv. Cur., 386. Sipahsalar, vol. ii, is not available to me, but in vol. i, p. 534, No. 1839 is mentioned in the footnote.

**Commentary.** Arabic, <sup>اصحح</sup> الإعتقادات by Sh. Mufid, see *GAL*, Sup. i. 323. Printed in the Arabic periodical *al-Murshid*, Baghdad, 1344 sqq., vols. I, II and III were available to me by the kindness of the Rāmpūr State Library. The rest, not available. A ms. copy exists in the Āṣafīya (Hyderabad, Deccan). Mufid differs on many points from *Sadūq*, but according to *RJ* the truth is with both of them, 563<sub>25</sub>.

Tehran, 621/8 (ii. 379) mentions a Persian *sharh* by Abū'l Fath Ḥusaynī.

—[كمال (كمال) الدين و إتمام (تام) النعمة في إثبات النبوة و كشف الميرة 2. *Ikmālu'd-dīn wa Itmāmu'n-Ni'ma fī Ithbātu'l-ghayba wa Kashfu'l-hayra.*

*Kashf*, 271, adds; not mentioned by Najāshī or Tūsī. *RJ* doubts authorship.

Text. Ed. E. Möller, Heidelberg, 1901; Sarkis, *Mu'jam*, 44; *GAL*, Sup. i. 322, many references. Berlin, 2721/2; Paris, 1231; Manchester, 807; Heidelberg, *ZS*, x. 74; Blochet, *Noww. Acq.*, 6666; Sipahsalar, vol. I, Nos. 97, 271, 272 (pp. 204-207), gives good account of Ṣadūq and Ruknū'd-Dawla.

—كتاب إثبات النبوة و كشف الميرة ; كتاب النبوة كبر (؟) 2532 ; compare Tūsī (37) with (26) . رسالة الغيبة [ .

3. —كتاب الأمال ( أو المجالس ) *Kitābu'l-Amālī.*

*Kashf*, 278; *RJ*; but not mentioned either by Najāshī or Tūsī under this name. The *majālis* of early authorities is probably the *amālī* of later ones. See also No. 12 below.

*GAL*, i. 187; Sup. i. 321, 322; Berlin, 1269; Tehran, ii. 24-25 (p. 11— ابن كتاب باسم المجالس هـ موسوم است—); Meshed, iv. 3, 5, 8; W. Ivanow in *JRAS* for 1920, 543.

Lith. Tehran, 1300 A.H.; Brit. Mus., *Cat. of Print. Books*, 163. The *Amālī* is a closely printed book (10 by 6 inches) of 402 pp., consisting of 97 *bābs*, and containing many interesting things on a variety of subjects.

4. —كتاب التوحيد *Kitābu't-Tawḥīd.*

Tūsī (29); Najāshī; *RJ*; *Kashf*, 2391.

*GAL*, Sup. i. 322; Meshed, *JRAS* for 1920, 543 (3 copies); Sipahsalar, 106, 295, 296 (pp. 229-230).

Lith. Tabriz or Tehran (?); no date or place, pp. 383, 7 by 4½ inches, containing 64 *bābs*.

5. —كتاب ثواب الأعمال—*Kitāb Thawābi'l-A'māl*.

Najāshī; Tūsī (34); *RJ* (10); *Kashf*, 733.

*GAL*, Sup. i. 322; Browne, 10; Manchester, 94.

6. —كتاب الحصال—*Kitābu'l-Khiṣāl*.

Najāshī; *RJ*; *Kashf*, 1050.

*GAL*, Sup. i. 322; Meshed, W. Ivanow in *JRAS* for 1920, 545 (حصال ?).

Lith. Tehran, 1302; Sarkis, *Mu'jam*, 44.

7. —كتاب السهو—*Kitābu's-Sāhw*.

Najāshī.

Berlin, 1370; apparently only one known copy. Sh. Mufid wrote a refutation of this, *RJ*, 564.

8. —كتاب عقاب الأعمال—*Kitāb 'Iqābi'l-A'māl*.

Najāshī; Tūsī (35); *Kashf*, 2120; *GAL*, Sup. i. 322.

9. —كتاب علل الشرائع والأحكام—*Kitāb 'Ilali'sh-Shara'i' wa'l-Ahkām*.

Najāshī; Tūsī (20); *RJ*; *Kashf*, 2129.

*GAL*, i. 187; Sup. i. 321; Berlin, 8326, 8327; Br. Mus., 1196, add. 23, 261 (p. 542); Iv. ASB. Ar., 1038; Sipahsalar, 132 (pp. 278-279).

10. —كتاب العلل غير مبوب—*Kitābu'l-'Ilal ghayr mubawwab*.

Najāshī; Tūsī (25).

Cf. *GAL*, i. 187 (*al-'ilal*); not known whether a separate work. Cf. Berlin, 8326, 8327.

11. —عيون أخبار الرضا—*Uyūn Akhbāri'r-Ridā*.

Not mentioned by Najāshī or Tūsī; *RJ*; *Kashf*, 2149.

*GAL*, i. 187; Sup. i. 321; Berlin, 9663; Munich, 188, 456; Paris, 2018; Br. Mus., 1619; and or. 130 (p. 730); India Office, 146; Meshed, W. Ivanow, *JRAS* for 1920, 543 (3 copies); Tehran, 550; Sipahsalar, 135, 360, 361, 362, 364 (pp. 282-283).

Lith. Tehran, 1275 A.H.

Persian Translation. تحفة ملكی, Bankipore, 507 (vi. 150); Sipahsalar, 103 (p. 225).

Persian Paraphrase. Iv. ASB. Per., 1108, 1109.

12. — ذکر مجلس الذى جرى له بين يدی رکن الدولة — *Dhikr majlis al-ladhi jarā lahu bayna yaday Ruknu'd-Dawla.*

Najāshī.

( مناظرة الملك رکن الدولة مع الصدوق ال (sic) بابویه ) *GAL*, i. 187; Sup. i. 322; Br. Mus., add. 16,832 (31), p. 403; Strothmann, *Isl. XXI*, 307. *Kashf*, 3120 gives another title:

مناظرة رکن الدولة مع محمد بن علي بن الحسين بن بابویه القمي و قد جمعها الشيخ رکن الدين الترويسي .

Najāshī mentions ذکر مجلس الذى جرى بين رکن الدولة and goes on ذکر مجلس الخامس (5) and ذکر مجلس رابع (4) ذکر مجلس ثالث (3) ذکر مجلس آخر (2). It is probable that all of these are now collected in the lithographed text of the *Amālī* (No. 3 above) which consists of 97 *majālis*.

13. — معانى الأخبار — *Ma'ānī'l-Akhbār.*

Najāshī; Tūsī (36); *RJ*; *Kashf*, 2992.

*GAL*, i. 187; Sup. i. 321; India Office, 145.

Persian Translation. Tehran, 25 (ii. 16).

14. — كتاب المقنع في الفقه — *Kitābu'l-Muqni' fi'l-fiqh.*

Najāshī; Tūsī; *Kashf*, 3079.

*GAL*, Sup. i. 322 (13).

Lith. Persia, 1860 A.H.; Sarkis, *Mu'jam*, 44; Br. Mus., *Cat. Arab. Print. Books*, 164.

15. — من لا يحضره الفقه — *Man lā yaħduru-hu'l-Faqīh.*

Not mentioned by Najāshī; Tūsī (28); *RJ*; *Kashf*, 3170.

*GAL*, i. 187; Sup. i. 321 (numerous references); Berlin, 4782/3; Pet., 250; Br. Mus., 905; Sup., 330, add. 19,358; Ind.

Of., 289; Paris, 1108; Blochet, *Nouv. Acq.*, 6615, 6616, 5559, 6662; Bodl. ii. 84-86; Būhār, 50; Bankipore, 263, 264, 479; Sipahsalar, 154 (and 10 other copies), gives full and very valuable account of its composition. See below.

Lith. Lucknow, A.H. 1306-7, 4 vols.; Sarkis, *Mu'jam*, 44; Br. Mus., *Cat. Arab. Print. Books*, 164.

**Persian Commentary.** Iv. Cur., 381; Bankipore, 1258, 1259, 1260.

With regard to its composition, the author writes in the introduction that when he was at Ḥalaq, near Balkh, he met Sharafu'd-dīn Abū 'Abdi'l-lāh, known as Ni'matu'l-lāh, Md. b. Ḥasan b. Ishāq b. Ḥusayn b. Ishāq b. Mūsā b. Ja'far as-Ṣādiq and greatly profited by his learned company and discourses. They discussed the book *Man lā yahduru-hu't-Tabib* of Md. b. Zakariyā' ar-Rāzī and Ni'matu'l-lāh asked him to compose a book در بیان حلال و حرام و شرائع و أحكام. Sh. Ṣadūq agreed to the suggestion and composed the book (Sipahsalar, i. 325). The title is reminiscent of كتاب دعائم الإسلام في ذكر الحلال والحرام والقضايا والأحكام *Ismaili Law of Wills*, p. 1.

It is difficult to give an explanation why Najāshī does not mention this the most important of the Shaykh's works, one of the "four books" of the Shi'a; it may however be suggested that instead of mentioning the whole book, he gave the title of each of the chapters. That is the only explanation which accords with the additional fact that there is a wide disparity between the list given by him and his contemporary Tūsī, who is also one of the most respected of Shi'ite doctors.

*Mus.* iii. 547-719 deals with the authorities cited in this work.

**16.** النصوص على الآئمة الإثني عشر—*an-Nuṣūṣ 'ala'l-a'immati'l-Ithnā 'ashar.*

Not mentioned by Najāshī or Tūsī.

*GAL*, i. 187; Paris, 2018<sub>2</sub>; *Kashf*, 3268, says that it is ascribed to the Shaykh. The authenticity is therefore very doubtful.

17. —كتاب النكاح—*Kitābu'n-Nikāh*

Najāshī. Is this a chapter from some work or a separate work? Iv. ASB. Ar., 614 (?). It is doubtful whether this is the work of Ṣadūq or of Qādī Nu'mān.

18. —كتاب الهدایة (في الأصول والفروع)—*Kitābu'l-Hidāya*.

Najāshī; *Kashf*, 3392; cf. *Kashf*, 3396; *RJ* says this is not mentioned by the author of *Amalu'l-Āmil* (558<sub>15</sub>).

*GAL*, Sup. i. 322; Ind. Of., 4632 (A. J. Arberry in *JRAS* for 1939, 395-6); Berlin, Brock., *Sup.*, p. 952.

Lith. Persia, 1276/1860; Sarkis, *Mu'jam*, 44; Br. Mus., Cat. Arab. Print. Books, 163.

B. Works mentioned by *Najāshī* but not known at present.

19. كتاب الإبابة	33. كتاب الأوامر
20. كتاب إبطال الإختيار و إثبات النص	34. كتاب أوصاف النبي
21. كتاب إبطال الغلو و التقصير	35. كتاب التاريخ
22. كتاب إثبات الوصية لعل ع	36. كتاب التجارة
23. كتاب إثبات خلافته	37. كتاب في تحريم الفقاع
24. كتاب إثبات النص عليه	38. كتاب تفسير القرآن
25. كتاب إثبات النص على الآئمة من	(Tūsī (30); <i>Kashf</i> , 627, 661, attributed to Imām Hasan al-'Askarī.)
26. كتاب أخبار أبي ذر و فضائله	39. كتاب تفسير قصيدة في أهل البيت ع
27. كتاب أخبار سلمان و زهده و فضائله	40. كتاب التقىة حذو النعل بالتعل
28. كتاب الاستفقاء	( <i>Kashf</i> , 2404; Tūsī (14).)
29. كتاب الإعتكاف	41. كتاب التيم
30. كتاب إمتحان المجالس	42. جامع الأخبار
31. كتاب الأوائل	(Not mentioned by <i>Naj.</i> or <i>Tūsī</i> . Sipahsalar,
32. كتاب الأواخر	

pp. 242-243, doubts its genuineness. <i>RJ</i> says that the author is 'Alī b. Sa'd al-Khayyāt.)	61. جواب مسألة وردت عليه من المدائن في العلاقة
43. جامع أخبار عبد العظيم بن عبد الله الحسني	62. كتاب جوابات مسائل وردت من مصر
44. كتاب جامع آداب المسافر للحج	63. كتاب مسألة نيسابور
45. كتاب جامع تفسير المنزل في الحج	64. كتاب جوابات مسائل الواردة عليه من واسطة
46. كتاب جامع الحج	65. كتاب الحدود
47. كتاب جامع الحجج الأنبياء	66. كتاب الحذاء و الحف (Kashf, 2403 ; Tūsī (13).)
48. كتاب جامع الحجج الأنمة	67. كتاب حق الجداد
49. كتاب جامع علل الحج (Tūsī (19) ; Kashf, 2128.)	68. حقوق الإخوان (Not mentioned by <i>Naj.</i> <i>RJ</i> says it is either his or his father's.)
50. جامع فرض الحج و العمرة	69. كتاب الحمض و النفاس
51. جامع فقه الحج	70. كتاب الخاتم
52. جامع نوادر الحج	71. كتاب الخطاب
53. كتاب جامع زيارة الرضاع	72. كتاب خلق الإنسان
54. كتاب جامع فضل الكعبة و الحرم	73. كتاب الحنس
55. كتاب الجزية	74. كتاب الحرواتيم
56. كتاب الجمعة و الجمعة	(Not mentioned by <i>Naj.</i> ; Tūsī ; Kashf, 2411.)
57. كتاب الجمل	75. كتاب أدعية الموقف
58. كتاب جوابات مسائل وردت من البصرة	76. كتاب دعائم الإسلام (See Note below.)
59. كتاب جوابات مسائل الواردة من قزوين	77. كتاب دلائل الأنمة و معجزاتهم
60. جوابات مسائل وردت من السكوفة	78. كتاب الدييات

79. كتاب دين الإمامية  
(Not in *Naj.*; *Kashf*, 2419; and *Tūsī* (40).)

80. كتاب فيه ذكر من لقىه من أصحاب  
الحديث وعن كل واحد منهم حديث

81. كتاب الرجال المختارين من أصحاب  
النبي ص  
(*Kashf*, 2453; incomplete, according to *Tūsī* (31).)

82. كتاب الرجمة

83. كتاب رسالته إلى أبي محمد الفارسي  
في شهر رمضان  
(*Mufid* wrote a refutation, Berlin, 1370.)

84. كتاب رسالة في شهر رمضان (جواب  
رسالة وردت في شهر رمضان)

85. كتاب الرسالة الثانية إلى أهل بغداد  
في معنى شهر رمضان

86. كتاب الرسالة الأولى في الغيبة  
(إلى أهل الرى و المقيمين بها  
وغيرهم، طوسي)

87. كتاب الرسالة الثانية  
(*Tūsī* (26); *Kashf*, 1474.)

88. " " الثالثة

89. كتاب الرسالة في أركان الإسلام  
(إلى أهل معرفة الدين، طوسي)

90. كتاب الروضة  
(*RJ* says this is genuine;  
but *Kashf*, 1592 (p. 295),  
attributes it to Husayn  
b. Hamdān al-Khaylānī;  
not mentioned by *Tūsī*.)

91. كتاب الزكوة

92. كتب الزهد

(*Tūsī* (33); *Kashf*, 2497.)

و منها - (١) كتاب زهد النبي ص  
(٢) كتاب زهد أمير المؤمنين (٣)  
كتاب زهد فاطمة (٤) كتاب زهد  
الحسن (٥) كتاب زهد الحسين  
كتاب زهد عل بن حسين  
(٦) كتاب زهد أبي جعفر (٨)  
كتاب زهد الصادق (٩) كتاب  
زهد أبي إبراهيم (١٠) كتاب زهد  
الرضا (١١) كتاب زهد أبي  
جعفر الثاني (١٢) كتاب زهد أبي  
الحسن على بن محمد (١٣) كتاب  
زهد أبي محمد الحسن بن على،

93. كتاب زيارة موسى و محمد

94. كتاب زيارات قبور الأنبياء

95. كتاب في زيد بن علي

96. كتاب السؤال

97. كتاب السر المكتوم إلى الوقت المعلوم

98. كتاب السكنى و العمرى

99.	كتاب السلطان (Tūsī ; <i>Kashf</i> , 2507.)	117.	كتاب الفرق
100.	كتاب السنة	118.	كتاب الفضائل (Not in <i>Naj.</i> ; <i>Kashf</i> , 2541 ; Tūsī.)
101.	كتاب الشعر	119.	كتاب فضائل العلوية (Tūsī ; <i>Kashf</i> , 2554 ; فضائل الشيعة— <i>RJ</i> )
102.	كتاب الشورى	120.	كتاب فضائل جعفر الطیار
103.	كتاب الصدقة و النحل و الهبة	121.	كتاب فضل الحسن و الحسين
104.	كتاب صفات الشيعة ( <i>Kashf</i> , 2066 ; <i>RJ</i> .)	122.	فضائل رجب (٢) فضائل شعبان (٣) فضائل شهر رمضان (Only <i>RJ</i> .)
105.	كتاب الصلاوة سوى الخمس	123.	فضائل الصدقة
106.	كتاب الصوم	124.	فضائل الصلاة
107.	كتاب الضيافة	125.	كتاب فضائل العلم
108.	كتاب الطرائف (Tūsī (21) ; <i>Kashf</i> , 2097.)	126.	كتاب فضائل المساجد
109.	كتاب في عبد المطلب و عبد الله و أبي طالب ع (Tūsī (23) ; <i>Kashf</i> , 2318.)	127.	كتاب فضائل المعروف
110.	كتاب العتق و التدبر و المکاتبة	128.	كتاب الفطرة
111.	كتاب علامات آخر الزمان	129.	كتاب فقه الصلاة
112.	كتاب علل الوضوء (Tūsī (18) ; <i>Kashf</i> , 2130.)	130.	كتاب التوائد
113.	كتاب العوض عن المجالس	131.	كتاب القربان
114.	كتاب غريب حديث النبي و أمير المؤمنين (Tūsī (12) ; <i>Kashf</i> , 2173.)	132.	كتاب القضاة و الأحكام
115.	كتاب الاغسال	133.	كتاب البايس
116.	كتاب فرائض الصلاة	134.	كتاب اللئام
		135.	كتاب اللئام و السلام

136.	كتاب المتعة	145.	كتب المصابيح
137.	كتاب المحافل		(Tūsī (32), (41); <i>Kashf</i> , 2596, 2958.) و منها —
	(Tūsī (17); <i>Kashf</i> , 2759.)		
138.	كتاب المختار بن أبي عبيدة		(١) المصباح الأول ، ذكر من روى
139.	كتاب مختصر تفسير القرآن		عن النبي من الرجال (٢) - الثاني ،
	(Cf. No. 38 above.)		ذكر من روى عن النبي من النساء
140.	كتاب المدينة و زيارة قبر النبي و الأئمة		(٣) - الثالث ، ذكر من روى عن
141.	كتاب مدينة العلم		أمير المؤمنين (٤) - الرابع ، ذكر
	أكبر من كتاب — (Tūsī (27) — RJ ; من لا يحضره الفقيه very imp.; <i>Kashf</i> , 2811.)		من روى عن فاطمة (٥) -
142.	كتاب المرشد		الخامس ، ذكر من روى عن أبي
	(Not mentioned by Naj.; Tūsī; <i>Kashf</i> , 2819.)		محمد حسن بن علي (٦) - السادس ،
143.	كتاب المسائل		ذكر من روى عن أبي عبد الله الحسين
	(١) مسائل الدييات (٢) - المحجج (٣) - الحدود (٤) - الخمس (٥) - الرضاع (٦) - الوذمة (٧) - الصلوة (٨) - الطلاق (٩) - العقيقة (١٠) - المواريث (١١) - النكاح (١٢) - الوصايا (١٣) - الوضوء (١٤) - الوقف ،	(٧) - السابع ، ذكر من روى	
144.	كتاب مصادقة الإخوان		عن علي بن الحسين (٨) - الثامن ،
	(Tūsī; <i>Kashf</i> , 2595, 2951.)		ذكر من روى عن أبي جعفر
			محمد بن علي (٩) - التاسع ، ذكر
			من روى عن أبي عبد الله
			جعفر الصادق (١٠) - العاشر ،
			ذكر من روى عن موسى بن
			جعفر (١١) - الحادى عشر ، ذكر
			من روى عن أبي الحسن الرضا
			(١٢) - الثاني عشر ، ذكر من روى
			عن أبي جعفر (١٣) - الثالث
			عشر ، ذكر من روى عن

أبي الحسن علي بن محمد (١٤) -	كتاب المواريث
الرابع عشر، ذكر من روى عن	(See 143 (10) above; Tūsī; <i>Kashf</i> , 3205.)
أبي محمد الحسن بن علي (١٥) -	كتاب المواعظ (و الحكيم)
الخامس عشر، ذكر الرجال الذين	(Tūsī; <i>Kashf</i> , 3207.)
خرجت إليهم التوقيعات،	كتاب مواقت الصلة
146. كتاب مصباح المصلى	كتاب الموالات
147. كتاب المعاش و المكاسب	كتاب مولد أمير المؤمنين
148. كتاب المعراج	كتاب مولد فاطمة عليها السلام
(Not mentioned by Naj.; (Tūsī (43); <i>Kashf</i> , 2598.)	كتاب المياه
149. كتاب المعرفة بالرجال البر	كتاب الناسخ و المنسوخ
150. كتاب المعرفة في فضل النبي و	كتاب النبوة
أمير المؤمنين والحسن والحسين	كتاب نوادر الصلة
151. كتاب مقتل الحسين بن علي	كتاب نوادر الطب
(Not in Naj.; Tūsī (15); <i>Kashf</i> , 3062.)	كتاب نوادر الفضائل
152. كتاب الملامي	كتاب نوادر النوادر
153. مناسك الحج	(Not in Naj.; Tūsī; <i>Kashf</i> , 3332.)
(Only <i>Kashf</i> , 3110.)	كتاب الوضوء
154. كتاب المنامي	كتاب الوقف

*Note on the Da'ā'imul-Islām*, No. 76.—Najāshī does not mention this book, but there is a note in the margin that Tūsī includes it among the Shaykh's works (p. 276, mar.). Tūsī and *RJ* both include it in their lists. *Kashf* has two entries: No. 1095, ascribed to Qādī Nu'mān and No. 1096, to Sh. Ṣadūq.

The position appears to be clear that there exists a book named *Da'ā'imul-Islām*, one of the most important of the Fatimid works, written by Qādī Nu'mān, W. Ivanow, *Guide*, No. 64, p. 37: *JRAS* for 1934, pp. 9 and 20-25 (full references); and Fyzee, *Ismaili Law of Wills* (which is the chapter on Wills from the *Da'ā'im*, edited and translated into English), pp. 1-9. And it is extremely doubtful whether there is another work by Ṣadūq of the same name. But apparently there was a tendency to ascribe the *Da'ā'im* to Ibn Bābawayhi and this is fully discussed by Ithnā 'Ashari authors. Why this is an erroneous opinion will be found in the *Mus.* iii. 313 sqq., and a reference also in *RJ*, 658, discussing the life and work of Qādī Nu'mān, the Fatimid Jurist (*JRAS* for 1934, 1-34).

According to Muhammad Bāqir-i-Majlisi, many people believed that the *Da'ā'im* was the work of Ṣadūq, but really it was the work of Nu'mān: *Mustadrak*, iii. 313—

قد كان أكثر أهل عصرنا يتوهّمون أنه تأليف الصدوق رحمة الله و قد ظهر لنا  
أنه تأليف أبي حنيفة النعمان بن محمد بن منصور قاضي مصر في أيام الدولة الإسماعيلية،  
And this may be taken to be the authoritative opinion among the Imāmi Shi'a.



## TRACT ON THE BELIEFS OF THE IMĀMIYA

In the name of Allah, The Merciful, The Compassionate.

All praise is due to Allah, the Lord of the worlds, Single is He and without associate; and may the blessings of Allah and His greetings be upon Muḥammad and his excellent and pure progeny. Sufficient for us is Allah, and the best of Agents and of those on whom we rely.

### CHAPTER 1

#### ON THE NATURE OF THE BELIEF OF THE IMĀMIYA CONCERNING *tawhīd* (THE UNITY OF GOD)

Says the learned divine Abū Ja'far Muḥammad b. 'Alī b. Husayn b. Mūsā Ibn Bābawayhi al-Qummi, the jurist, the author of this book: Know that our belief concerning *tawhīd* is that Allah, exalted is He, is one (*wāḥid*) and absolutely unique (*aḥad*).<sup>1</sup> There is naught like unto Him; He is Prior<sup>2</sup> (Ancient); He never was, and never will be, non-existent; He is the Hearing and the Seeing One; the Omniscient ('ālīm), the Wise; the Living, the Everlasting, the Mighty ('azīz), the Holy (*quddūs*), the Knowing One ('ālīm), the Powerful, the Self-Sufficient (*ghāni*).

<sup>1</sup> For grammatical distinction between *wāḥid* and *aḥad* see Wright, *Arab. Gram.* ii. 236. The difference is also explained in *MB*, s.v. وَاحِدٌ, 242. The same explanation will be found in *N* at p. 91 in a *fā'ida* to *an-Nāfi' Yawmī'l-Hashr*. There is also a long discussion of the two terms in *Tawhīd*, 48–61; but probably the truth is as Imām Bāqir is reported to have said (*Tawhīd*, 56):

قال البارع الْأَحَدُ الْفَرْدُ الْمُتَفَرِّدُ وَ الْأَحَدُ : وَ الْوَاحِدُ بَعْدُ وَاحِدٍ وَ هُوَ الْمُتَفَرِّدُ الَّذِي لَا يُظَاهِرُ لَهُ وَ التَّوْحِيدُ إِلَّا قَرَارُ الْوَاحِدِ

The term *wāḥid* refers to *number*, *aḥad* to *essence* or *substance*. Therefore *wāḥid* is single in respect of number; and *aḥad* is unique, simple or unanalysable in respect of substance. According to Wensinck, *aḥadīya* is a quality of the essence, and *wāḥidīya* is called a quality of action, *MO*, 205–6. See also Affifi, 24, 39, 63. *FC*, §3.

<sup>2</sup> *BHA*, §§42, 69–70.

He cannot be described by His Essence (*jawhar*), His Body, His Form [94], or by His Accidental Qualities ('*arad*).<sup>1</sup> Nor in terms of length, breadth, weight, lightness, quiescence, motion, place, or time. He, exalted is He, transcends all the attributes of His creatures; He is beyond both the limitations of transcendence and of immanence.<sup>2</sup>

He is a Thing (*shay'*), but not like other things.<sup>3</sup> He is Unique (*ahad*), Eternal; He begets not, lest He may be inherited; nor is He begotten, lest He may be associated (with others). There is no one like unto Him; He has no equal or opponent, compeer or consort. Nothing can be compared with Him; He has no rival, no partner.<sup>4</sup> "Human eyes cannot behold Him; while He discerns (the power of) eyes."<sup>5</sup> The thoughts of men cannot compass Him; while He is aware of them. "Slumber overtakes Him not, nor sleep" [2, 256]; and He is the Gracious<sup>6</sup> and the Knowing One, the Creator of all things. There is no deity other than Him; to Him (alone) belongs (the power of) creation and authority. Blessed is Allah, the Lord of the worlds. And he who believes in *tashbih* (immanence) is a polytheist. And he, who attributes to the Imāmīs (beliefs) other than those that have been stated concerning the Unity of Allah (*tawhīd*), is a liar. And every report (*khabar*) contrary to what I have stated concerning *tawhīd* is an invention. Every tradition (*hadīth*) which does not accord with the Book of Allah is null

<sup>1</sup> *MC*, 209 sqq.; *BHA*, §86; *FC*, §6.

<sup>2</sup> حَدَّدَ الْأَطْبَالِ obviously refers to those people who believe that God has no attributes or qualities, nor can He be said to be possessed of perfection; and حَدَّدَ التَّشْبِيهِ refers to those who say that God possesses certain attributes or qualities but to the degree of perfection, and therefore His qualities cannot be compared with the qualities possessed by human beings. Ibn Bābawayhi denies both these positions. His denial of تَشْبِيهِ immanence, and تَعْزِيزِ transcendence, may be compared with Ibnu'l-'Arabi's attitude, *Affifi*, 18, 20 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> *MC*, 190, *Fīkh Akbar* II, art. 4; *FC*, §§5-7; *BHA*, §86.

<sup>4</sup> Here D adds أَنْجَلٌ, "He has no adviser".

<sup>5</sup> Qur. 6, 103.

<sup>6</sup> *MC*, 82; *BHA*, §§144-148.

and void, and if it is to be found in the books of our doctors, it is apocryphal (*mudallas*).<sup>1</sup>

As for the reports (*akhbār*) which lead ignorant persons to imagine that Allah is comparable to His creatures, their meanings can be understood by the significance of similar passages in the Qur'ān. For example, in the Qur'ān (we have): "Everything is perishable except His Face (*wajh*)" [28, 88]. Now the meaning of *wajh*, in this context, is *dīn* (religion). And *wajh* is that whereby Allah is attained [95] and wherewith one can turn to Him.<sup>2</sup>

And in the Qur'ān (we have): "And on the day when the leg shall be bared<sup>3</sup> and they shall be called upon to prostrate themselves, while they are secure (or completely brought back to life)" [39, 57].<sup>4</sup> Now *sāq* (leg) means the result or consummation of the affair and its intensity.

And (there occurs) in the Qur'ān: "Lest a soul should say: Oh woe to me! for what I neglected in my duty (*janb*) towards Allah!" [39, 57]. Here *janb* means obedience.<sup>5</sup>

And (we have) in the Qur'ān: "And I breathed into it of My spirit" [15, 29].<sup>6</sup> Now that spirit (*rūh*) was created by Him, and Allah had breathed of it into Adam and Jesus. He only said "My *rūh*," as He said "My house", "My slave", "My Garden",<sup>7</sup> "My Fire", "My sky", and "My earth."

<sup>1</sup> *Mudallas* is explained by Md. I'jāz Hasan as "that tradition which an opponent of the Imāmiya has ascribed to the Shi'ites". دَلَسْ means to hide the defects in merchandise which is sold, *MB*; whence according to the traditionists "to conceal the defects of the *hadīth*, either in the text, in the chain of narrators or in the source". *EI, Supp.* 222, s.v. *Tadlis*.

<sup>2</sup> *MC*, 63 sqq., 88 sq.; *FC*, 16; *Kalāmi Pīr*, 53 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> كُنْفَ عَنْ سَاقٍ is a peculiar expression of the Arabs, which signifies a great rush and tumult, in which, while running hither and thither, the gowns are lifted and legs bared. Explained further in *Taṣḥīḥ (al-Murshid*, i. 78).

<sup>4</sup> مَالُونَ وَ هُمْ omitted in D.

<sup>5</sup> Omitted in D.

<sup>6</sup> Explained in *Taṣḥīḥ (Mur.* i. 111).

<sup>7</sup> So in D. In N we have حَرَجٍ.

And in the Qur'ān (we have): "Nay both His hands are outspread" [5, 69]; by which is meant "the good of this world and the good of the next world".<sup>1</sup>

And in the Qur'ān (we have): "And the sky, We built it by (Our) hands" [51, 47]. Now *ayd* (hand) means "strength". And similarly, His Word, exalted is He: "And remember Our slave David, possessed of *ayd*" [38, 16],—that is, possessed of strength (*quwwa*). And in the Qur'ān (we have): "O Iblis, what prevents thee from adoring what I have created with my two Hands" [38, 75]. (By two Hands), He means "My power and My strength (*qudرا*, *quwwa*)".<sup>2</sup> And in the Qur'ān (we have): "And on the Day of Resurrection the whole of the earth (will be) in His possession (*qabda*)"<sup>3</sup> [39, 67]; that is to say, it will be His property and no one will share the earth with Him. And in the Qur'ān (we have): "And the Heavens shall be rolled up in His right hand (*yamīn*)"<sup>3</sup> [39, 67]. (By "right hand") is meant "His power" (*qudرا*).

And in the Qur'ān (we have): "And Thy Lord shall come, while the angels shall be arranged rank on rank" [89, 23]. This means that "the command" of Thy Lord shall come.

And in the Qur'ān (we have): "Nay verily, from their Lord on that day are they veiled" [83, 15]. That is, "from the reward (*thawāb*) of their Lord". And in the Qur'ān (we have): "What do they expect but that Allah should come unto them in the shadows of a cloud" [2, 206];<sup>3</sup> [96] that is, "the punishment of Allah."

And in the Qur'ān (we have): "Faces on that day shall be bright (*nādira*), gazing (*nāzira*) on their Lord" [75, 22-23]. That means (the faces) will be lighted up (*mushriqa*), looking at their Lord's reward.

And in the Qur'ān (we have): "And he on whom my wrath descends is lost" [20, 83]. Now the wrath of Allah is His punishment and His pleasure is His reward.

<sup>1</sup> Expl. *Tasq.* (*Mur.* i. 110).

<sup>2</sup> Sh. Mufid expl. that يد does not mean قدرة or قوة. It means نعمى "my favour", regarding *ad-dunyā* and *al-ākhira*. *Tasq.* (*Mur.* i. 143).

<sup>3</sup> N adds here *وَالْمَلَائِكَةِ*, as in the Qur.

And (we have) in the Qur'ān: "Thou knowest what is in my soul, but I know not what is in Thy soul" [5, 116];<sup>1</sup> that is, Thou hast knowledge of my inmost secrets, but I have no knowledge of Thy secrets.

And in the Qur'ān (we have): "Allah biddeth you beware of Himself (*nafs*)" [3, 27]; by *nafs* He means His revenge.

And (we have) in the Qur'ān: "Verily Allah and His angels shower blessings on the Prophet" [33, 56], and also: "He it is Who blesseth you, and His angels (bless you)" [33, 42]. Now *salāt* from Allah means His mercy; and (*salāt*) from angels is (their) asking for (your) pardon and purification<sup>2</sup>; and (*salāt*) from men is prayer (*du'a'*).

We have in the Qur'ān: "And they (the unbelievers or Jews) schemed, and Allah schemed (against them), and Allah is the best of schemers" [3, 47]; and also: "Verily the hypocrites seek to beguile Allah, but it is Allah Who beguileth them" [4, 141];<sup>3</sup> and: "Allah doth mock them" [2, 14]; and we have: "Allah will deride at (*sakhira*) them" [9, 80]; and we have: "They have forgotten Allah, so He hath forgotten them" [9, 68]. And the meaning of all this is that He, the Glorious and Mighty, shall requite them for their scheming (*makr*), beguiling (*mukhāda'a*), mockery (*istihzā*), and forgetfulness (*nisyān*); and that is, He will make them forget themselves, as He, the Mighty and Glorious, has said: "And be not ye as those who forgot Allah, therefore He caused them to forget their souls" [59, 19]. For in reality Allah, the Glorious and Mighty, does not scheme, nor does He beguile, deride, or forget.<sup>4</sup> Exalted is Allah beyond all this by His Greatness and Glory.

<sup>1</sup> D, p. 14, line 7, erroneously says that this refers to Joseph; this is a reference to Jesus.

<sup>2</sup> اور رسول اللہ کی پاکیگی as تزکیۃ as Here the Urdu translator renders "and declaring the purity of the Messenger of God", which is hardly justifiable. D; 14, 6th line from bot.

<sup>3</sup> Regarding the explanation of 3, 47 and 4, 141, Sh. Mufid says that Ibn Bābawayhi is correct, but a further reason is that the Arabs in a number of cases called a thing by a metaphorical name (الاسم المجازی).

<sup>4</sup> How نیسان can be attributed to Allah in Q. 59, 19 is expl. by Sh. Mufid. *Taqṣ.* (Mur. i. 249-250).

In the traditions which are attacked [97] by opponents and heretics, there do not occur any except words similar to these, and their meaning is the meaning of the words of the Qur'ān.

## CHAPTER 2

### CONCERNING THE ATTRIBUTES (*sifāt*) OF (HIS) ESSENCE (*dhāt*) AND THE ATTRIBUTES OF (HIS) ACTIONS (*af'āl*)

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far (on whom be the mercy of Allah): our belief concerning the attributes of (His) essence is this. Whenever we describe Allah by the attributes of His essence,<sup>1</sup> we only desire by each attribute the denial of its opposite in respect of Him, the Glorious and Mighty. We say that Allah, the Glorious and Mighty, has always been the Hearing One (*samī'*), the Seeing One (*bašīr*), the Knowing One ('ālim), the Wise (*hakīm*), the Powerful (*qādir*), the Glorious ('azīz), the Living (*hayy*), the Ever-lasting (*qayyūm*), the One (*wāhid*), the Prior (*qadīm*),—for these are the attributes of His essence. We do not say that He, the Glorious and Mighty, has always been the Great Creator (*khallāq*), the One possessed of Action (*fā'il*), Will (*shā'i'*)<sup>2</sup> and Intention (*murīd*), the Approver (*rādī*), the Disapprover (*sākhīt*), the Provider (*rāziq*), the Bountiful One (*wahhāb*), the Speaker (*mutakallim*),—because these are the attributes of His Actions (*af'āl*), and (therefore)

<sup>1</sup> Sh. Mufid in *Taqṣīr* (*Murūj* ii. 19-20) explains this and says that the attributes of Allah are divided into two classes. In the first class, there is no reference to action—*sifātu dh-dhāt*; in the second, they refer to actions—*af'āl*. The distinction is this: in the case of the attributes of the essence, the opposite cannot be predicated of Allah. You cannot say, for example, that He dies (opp. of *hayy*, ever-living), or is weak (opp. of *qādir*), or is ignorant; and you cannot describe Him as being anything other than living (*hayy*), knowing ('ālim) and powerful (*qādir*); whilst you can say that Allah is not a creator today; or that He is not a giver of sustenance to Zayd; or that He is not the revivifier of an actually dead man, and so on. And Allah can be described by such contraries as Allah gives and withholds, causes to live and causes to die, etc.

<sup>2</sup> Reading شائِرَةَ as in D; N err. شائِرَةَ.

they are created (*muhdath*).<sup>1</sup> For it is not permissible to say that Allah is always to be qualified by them.<sup>2</sup>

### CHAPTER 3

#### THE BELIEF CONCERNING *taklīf* (RESPONSIBILITY, OBLIGATION)<sup>3</sup>

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far: Our belief concerning the obligation to obey the law (*taklīf*) is that Allah imposes upon His slaves (mankind) only such legal obligations as are within their powers (to obey), for He says: "Allah tasketh not a soul beyond its capacity" [2, 286]. Now (in the Arabic idiom) *wus'* (capacity, scope) indicates a lesser degree of potentiality than *ṭaqā* (strength). And (Imām Ja'far) as-Ṣādiq has said: I swear by Allah, Allah has not burdened His slaves, save to a lesser extent than their capacity. For He has only imposed upon them five prayers during the course of a day and night; and only thirty days of fast during the year; and only five out of every two hundred *dirhams* (as *zakāt*); and only one pilgrimage during the course of a lifetime, although the full extent of their capacity is greater.<sup>4</sup> [98]

### CHAPTER 4

#### THE BELIEF IN RESPECT OF HUMAN ACTIONS

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far: Our belief concerning human actions is that they are created (*makhlūqa*), in the sense that

<sup>1</sup> افعال محدثة D; افعال وهي محدثة N.

<sup>2</sup> *MC*, 206 sqq.; *BHA*, §56, §62, §§97-99; *FC*, §13, §16.

<sup>3</sup> The word *taklīf* in the sense used by the theologians is difficult to render. It is rendered "the imposition of a task" by Miller, *BHA*, §10, p. 5. For a fuller expl. see §§131-143. Wensinck, *MC*, 43, translates it "the obligation of the law"; p. 216, "the bondage of the law", etc. The "sanction" of the law may also be suggested, the word sanction being used in the modern juristic sense. But this can only be used with reference to God. Ivanow translates it "religious duties", *FC*, §55; this is not very satisfactory. Probably the best is "obligation", "responsibility", Affifi, 155. *Taklīf* is so used that God is *mukallif* (one who applies or enforces *taklīf*), while man is *mukallaf* (one to whom *taklīf* is applied or upon whom it is enforced). In English we would say: God enforces the rule of law; man is obliged to obey.

<sup>4</sup> *MC*, 261, 265; *FC*, §55.

Allah possesses foreknowledge (*khalq taqdir*), and not in the sense that Allah compels mankind to act in a particular manner by creating a certain disposition (*khalq takwīn*). And the meaning of all this is that Allah has never ceased to be aware of the potentialities (*maqādir*) of human beings.<sup>1</sup>

## CHAPTER 5

### THE BELIEF REGARDING THE DENIAL OF BOTH CONSTRAINT (*jabr*) AND DELEGATION (*tafwid*)

Says the Shaykh, our belief concerning this is the saying of Imām Ja‘far as-Ṣādiq: There is neither (complete) compulsion (or constraint) (on human beings), nor (complete) delegation (or freedom), but the matter is midway between the two (extremes).<sup>2</sup> He was asked to define what was meant by “an affair midway between the two”? He said: For instance, you see a man

<sup>1</sup> This explanation is necessary in order to repel the inference that if God is the creator of all action, then the responsibility for sin cannot be but His—which is of course an impossible doctrine having regard to the belief in *taklif*. The Urdu translator explains *khalq taqdir* by saying that God has created human beings with the power to do good as well as evil, but He possesses foreknowledge of what they are going to do. *Khalq takwīn* would imply that God has created the actions as well, so that their actions are really His actions. This is not the Ithnā ‘Asharī view D, notes to p. 17.

See also Wensinck, *MC*, 49 sqq. (*qadar* = the eternal decree of God, p. 53); especially, 55. Far more radical is *BHA*, §§118-122 in which is advocated complete free will. *FC*, §§95, 96; Affifi, 152-156. “God does not will in the sense that He chooses, but in the sense that He decrees what He knows will take place”, Affifi, 156. In *MB*, 311<sub>8-9</sub> it is clearly stated that the Ash‘arites take the view of complete predestination, and the Mu‘tazilites, of complete free will, while the truth is midway between the two extremes. *Khalq taqdir* and *takwīn* are explained by Sh. Mufid in *Taqṣīr*. (*Mur.* ii. 98-100), who holds that the actions of men are not by any means created by Allah (اعمال العباد غير مخلوقة لله), for ‘ilm and *khalq* are two different things in Arabic. Some further explanation will also be found later at *Mur.* ii. 140.

<sup>2</sup> بل امر بين بين D; بل امر بين امر بن N. Sh. Mufid explains *jabr* and *tafwid*, *Mur.* ii. 142-143.

intent upon a crime and you dissuade him, but he does not desist, and you leave him; then he commits the crime. Now, it is not, because he did not accept (your advice) and you left him, that you are the person who commanded him to commit the crime.<sup>1</sup>

## CHAPTER 6

### THE BELIEF CONCERNING (ALLAH'S) INTENTION (*irāda*) AND WILL (*mashī'a*)<sup>2</sup>

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far: Our belief concerning this is (based upon) the saying of (Imām Ja'far) as-Ṣādiq: Allah wills (*shā'a*) and intends (*arāda*); or He does not like (*lam yuhibba*) and He does not approve (*lam yarḍa*).<sup>3</sup>

Now by *shā'a* (He wills) is meant that nothing takes place without His knowledge; and *arāda* is synonymous with it; and He does not like (*lam yuhibba*) it to be said that He is "the third of the three" [cf. 5, 77]; and He does not approve of disbelief on the part of His slaves. Says Allah, the Mighty and Glorious; "Verily, thou (O Muḥammad) guidest not whom thou lovest, but Allah guideth whom He will" [28, 56]. And He says, Exalted is He: "And ye will not, unless (it be that) Allah willeth" [76, 30; 81, 29]. And He says, the Glorious and Mighty: "And if thy Lord willed, all who are in the earth would have believed together. Wouldst thou (O Muḥammad) compel men until they are believers?" [10, 99].<sup>4</sup> And He says, Glorious and Mighty is He: "And it is not for any soul to believe save by the permission of Allah" [10, 100]. And as He, the Glorious and Mighty, says: "No soul can ever die except by Allah's leave

<sup>1</sup> *MG*, 157, 210, 213; *BHA*, §119; *FC*, §§95-96; *Affifi*, 154.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. *Affifi*, 160. According to Ibnu'l-İ-Arabi, *mashī'a* is the divine commonsense, and is an emanation from God, something like Plotinus' First Intellect; whereas *irāda* is the creative will. The distinction between *irāda* and *mashī'a* is, according to *Affifi*, derived by him from Ḥallāj.

<sup>3</sup> The Imām takes these four expressions and explains and illustrates them one by one.

<sup>4</sup> Qur. 10, 99 is expl. in *Taṣ. (Mur. iii. 22-23)*.

and at a term appointed ” [3, 139].<sup>1</sup> And as He, the Glorious and Mighty, says: [99] “ And they say, had we any chance in the affair we should not have been slain here. Say (O Muhammad): Even if ye had been in your houses those appointed to be slain would surely have gone forth to the places where they were to lie ” [3, 148]. And as He says: “ If thy Lord willed, they would not do it; so leave them alone with their devising ” [6, 112]. And He, the most Exalted, says: “ Had Allah willed, they would not have been polytheists ” [6, 107].<sup>2</sup> And he says: “ And if We had willed, We could have given every soul its guidance ” [32, 13]. And He says: “ And whomsoever Allah wishes to guide, that man’s breast will He open to Islam; but whom He wishes to mislead, strait and narrow will He make his breast, as though he were mounting up to the very Heavens! ” [6, 125].<sup>2</sup> And He says: “ Allah desireth to make clear to you, and guide you by the examples of those who were before you, and would turn to you in mercy ” [4, 31]. And He says: “ It is Allah’s desire to assign no portion in the Hereafter ” [3, 170]. And He says: “ Allah desires to make the burden light for you ” [4, 32]. And He says: “ Allah desireth for you ease; He desireth not hardship for you ” [2, 181]. And He says: “ And Allah wishes to turn to you in mercy; but those who follow their lusts desire that ye should go greatly astray ” [4, 32]. And He says: “ And Allah desireth no injustice for (His) slaves ” [40, 33].

This is our belief concerning (Allah’s) Intention and (His) Will. Our opponents denounce us for this, and say that according to our belief, Allah intends (that man should commit) crimes and that He desired the murder of Husayn b. ‘Ali, on whom both be peace.<sup>3</sup> This is not what we believe. But we say that Allah desired that the sin of the sinners should be contradis-

<sup>1</sup> كَذَابًا مُؤْجَلاً may also be rendered “ a fixed ordinance ”.

<sup>2</sup> Expl. in *Tas. (Mur.* iii. 21-22).

<sup>3</sup> Referring to the believers in extreme predestination. *MC*, 81, 82, discusses the Mu’tazilite view, which is the same as that held here. See further *MC*, 143, where the Ash’arite view is fully discussed. The doctrine of al-Qummi does not differ in the main from the neo-Ash’arite.

tinguished from the obedience of those that obey, [100] that He desired that sins, viewed as actions, should not be ascribed to Him, but that the knowledge of these sins may be ascribed to Him, even before the commission thereof.<sup>1</sup>

And we hold that Allah's wish was that the murder of Husayn should be a sin against Him and the opposite of obedience. And we say that Allah intended that his (Husayn's) murder should be prohibited, and something which was not commanded. And we say that his murder was something that was disliked and not approved;<sup>2</sup> and we say that his murder was the cause of Allah's displeasure and it was not the cause of His approval, and that Allah the Mighty and Glorious did not desire to prevent his murder by means of (His) compulsion or power, but merely by prohibition and word. And if He had prohibited it by (His) compulsion and power, even as he prevented it by prohibition and word, surely he would have escaped being murdered, just as Abraham was saved from the fire, when Allah, the most Exalted, said<sup>3</sup> to the fire in which he (Abraham) was thrown: "O fire, be coolness and peace for Abraham" [21, 69].

And we say that Allah always knew that Husayn would be killed by force, and by such death, attain everlasting merit, and his murderer, everlasting wretchedness. We hold that what Allah wills, happens; and what He willeth not, will not happen.<sup>4</sup> This is our belief regarding Allah's intention and will, and not that which is ascribed to us by our opponents and for which we are reviled by those who hold heretical views.

<sup>1</sup> *MC*, 143, 144; *BHA*, §§118 sqq.; *FC*, §§86-89, 95.

<sup>2</sup> The clause *مستحبًا غير مستحسناً* omitted in D.

<sup>3</sup> قال الله تعالى للنار: كوني أخ D ; قال الله تعالى للنار التي ألق فيها: يا نار كوني أخ N

<sup>4</sup> This is again difficult to reconcile. The extreme Sunnite view appears to be that everything was caused and willed by God, either directly or by means of His knowledge. The Mu'tazilites however denied ascription of evil to Allah. And the Ithnā 'Asharis are close upon this view, *BHA*, §§125, 126. The Ismā'īlis do not attribute evil to God, *FC*, p. 72 (top). For a philosophical view, see Affifi, 156 sqq. Fuller discussion, *Tawhīd*, 272-277.

## CHAPTER 7

THE BELIEF CONCERNING DESTINY (*qadā'*) AND DECREE  
(*qadar*)<sup>1</sup>

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far: Our belief concerning this is the reply of (Imām Ja'far) as-Ṣādiq to Zarāra when he was asked: What do you say, O my Leader, concerning destiny (*qadā'*) and decree (*qadar*)? He said: I say [101] that when Allah will collect the slaves on the Day of Resurrection, He will ask them concerning what He had enjoined on them, and will not question them concerning what He had destined for them.<sup>2</sup>

Now discussion about (Allah's) decree is prohibited; for the Prince of Believers, when questioned about the decree replied: It is a deep sea, do not enter into it. Then the man asked him a second time and he replied: It is a dark path, do not traverse it. Then he asked him a third time and he said: It is a secret of Allah, do not speak about it.<sup>3</sup> And the Prince of Believers, on whom be peace, said concerning the decree (*qadar*): Lo! Verily, *qadar* is a secret of Allah's secrets, and a veil of Allah's veils, and a guarded thing within Allah's guarded thing,<sup>4</sup> being

<sup>1</sup> For *qadā'* see *EI*, ii. 603 and for *qadar*, *EI*, ii. 605 (both by Macdonald). Also R. Levy, *Sociology of Islam*, ii. 45-47.

<sup>2</sup> *Tawḥīd*, 292. Sh. Mufid does not accept this as a properly authenticated report, *Taqṣīr* (*Mur*. iii. 60-61). He explains that Ibn Bābawayhi has cited "rare" traditions. *Qadā'* has four meanings: احدهما الخلق و الثاني الامر و الثالث الاعلام و الرابع القضاء (p. 60), and then he cites verses of the Qur'ān in support. A further explanation will be found in *Mur*. iii. 283.

<sup>3</sup> *Tawḥīd*, 292. Adopting the reading of N تَكْبِرْ. D has تَكْبِرْ, which would mean "Do not trouble yourself about it, or do not attempt to unravel its mystery". Sh. Mufid explains that this prohibition has two applications: it applies to people who after discussion may lose the true faith and be confused; and it applies also to people who question the wisdom of Allah's creation, and its causes and effects, *Taqṣīr* (*Mur*. iii. 282-283).

<sup>4</sup> So N سَرَّ من سَرَّ اللَّهُ و سَرَّ مِنْ سَرَّ اللَّهُ و حَرَّزَ مِنْ حَرَّزَ اللَّهُ  
سَرَّ مِنْ اسْتَرَّ اللَّهُ و سَرَّ مِنْ اسْتَرَّ اللَّهُ الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

raised within the veil of Allah,<sup>1</sup> concealed from Allah's creatures and sealed by the seal of Allah. Among the things within the knowledge of Allah, it has priority (over all others). Allah has exonerated His slaves from its knowledge, and elevated it beyond the ambit of their perception and reason. They cannot attain to (a knowledge) of its divine nature,<sup>2</sup> or its eternal power, or its resplendent greatness, or the glory of its oneness; for this (knowledge of *qadar*) is a raging sea, exclusive to Allah, the Mighty and Glorious. Its depth is the distance between the heavens and the earth; its width, the distance between the east and the west; it is dark as a starless night; full of snakes and fishes, which at one time come up to the surface, and at others go down into the bottom of the sea. At the bottom (of that sea) there is a shining sun.<sup>3</sup> It does not befit any one to seek knowledge of it (the sun), except the One, the Matchless, the Everlasting. He who tries to seek knowledge of it, contravenes Allah in His command, and disputes His sovereignty, and probes into His secret and His veil. And (thereby) "He shall incur the wrath [102] of Allah: Hell shall be his abode and wretched the journey thither" [8, 16].<sup>4</sup>

And it is related that once upon a time the Prince of Believers, on whom be peace, avoided a slanting wall and went to the other side. He was asked: O Prince of Believers, do you run from the destiny (*qaḍā'*) of Allah? He replied: I run from the destiny (*qaḍā'*) of Allah to His decree (*qadar*).

And (Imām Ja'far) as-Ṣādiq was asked concerning charms (*ruqya*, pl. *ruqan*), whether to some extent they avert Allah's decree (*qadar*). And he replied: They form part of (Allah's) decree.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Meaning that within the things which are God's secrets, it has an exalted rank.

<sup>2</sup> The correct reading appears to be that of D: لا ينالونه بحقيقة الريانة و لا يقدرونها الصمدانية.

<sup>3</sup> Reading ضى D, يضى N; neither ضى nor يضى is correct.

<sup>4</sup> *Tawḥīd*, 306.

<sup>5</sup> *Tawḥīd*, 294-295. It is significant that the whole of this chapter is based upon the fundamental dogma that the human mind is utterly

## CHAPTER 8

THE BELIEF CONCERNING MAN'S ORIGINAL NATURE  
(*fīṭra*)<sup>1</sup> AND HIS TRUE GUIDANCE (*hidāya*)

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far: Our belief concerning this is that Allah has undoubtedly created man with a disposition towards (accepting) the unity of Allah.<sup>2</sup> And this is (in consonance with) what He, the Mighty and Glorious, says: "The true faith of Allah, for the acceptance of which He has

incapable of comprehending the secrets of *qadā'* and *qadar*. (There is also a clear distinction between *qadr* and *qadar*; فَالْقَدْرُ بِالْفَتْحِ فَالْقَدْرُ مَا يَقْدِرُهُ اللَّهُ مِنَ الْقَضَاءِ وَبِالْفَتْحِ مَا صَدَرَ مَقْدُورًا عَنْ فَعْلِ الْقَادِرِ MB, 310<sub>20</sub>.) A useful discussion is by Levy (op. cit.); whether originally there was a distinction is extremely doubtful. *Qadā'* appears to be "predestination" strictly, that is, God's will that a certain thing should happen; and *qadar* is the *actual happening* of the event in consequence of such predestination. To take an analogy from the law, something like judgement and execution. Some translators like Ivanow define it as chance: "Perhaps the best meaning would be—chance", *FC*, 70. This is difficult to justify. A full discussion of Sh. Ṣadūq's views will be found in *Tawhīd*, 291 sqq. *Qadā'* and its ten meanings are discussed in *Tawhīd*, 295–297, but there is no clear distinction. See also *MB*, 72 for *qadā'*; and 309–311 for *qadar* (and *qadr*). The eight meanings of *qadar* are discussed in *FC*, §96. After a full discussion of the problem one fully appreciates the advice of Majlīsī (*I'tiqādāt*, 81, bot.):

وَلِسْ لَكَ التَّفْكِيرُ فِي شَيْءِ الْقَضَاءِ وَالْقَدْرِ وَالْخَوْضِ فِيهَا، فَإِنَّ الْأَنْثَةَ  
قَدْ نَهَرْنَا عَنِ التَّفْكِيرِ فِيهَا فَإِنَّ فِيهَا شَيْئًا قَوِيَّةً يَعْجزُ عَوْنَى أَكْثَرَ النَّاسِ  
عَنْ حَلَّهَا، وَقَدْ حَلَّ فِيهَا كَثِيرٌ مِنَ الْعَلَمَاءِ، فَإِنَّكَ وَالْتَّفْكِيرَ وَالْقَدْرَ وَالْخَوْضَ — (illegible) فِيهَا،  
Sh. Mufid also explains how God commands good acts and prohibits bad actions in terms of the doctrine of predestination, *Taqṣīr*. (*Mur.* iii. 60–61).

<sup>1</sup> *Fīṭra* is a term which has several meanings, e.g. "original nature", "natural religion", and finally "Islam". *MC*, 42–44, 214 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> Sh. Mufid attributes this to Imām Ja'far as-Ṣādiq (*Mur.* iii. 327), and says that Sh. Ṣadūq has not explained its meaning. The first meaning of *fīṭra* is "creation"; the second is the one explained in the text. Unfortunately the text of *Tashīh* here is full of lacunae and not fully comprehensible, as the editor explains in the footnotes.

created man” [30, 29].<sup>1</sup> And concerning His saying, exalted is He: “It is not for Allah to lead a people astray after He hath rightly guided them, until He hath clearly shewn to them what they ought to fear” [9, 116]. Imām Ja‘far as-Ṣādiq<sup>2</sup> said: (He does not lead them astray) until He informs them of what pleases and what displeases Him.

And concerning the saying of Him, who is exalted above all: “And (He) inspired it<sup>3</sup> (with the consciousness of) what is wrong for it and what is right for it” [91, 8], he (Imām Ja‘far) said: (That means) He made manifest to it (the soul) what (acts) are permissible and what sins are to be avoided. And He, Exalted is He, says: “Verily We have shown him the way, whether he be grateful or disbelieving” [76, 3]; and (concerning this) he (Imām Ja‘far) said: (That is) We have made it (the true religion) known to him, whether he accepts it or not.

And concerning the saying of Him, who is Mighty and Glorious: “And as for Thamūd, We gave them guidance, but they preferred blindness to guidance” [41, 16], Imām Ja‘far explained: (And this) despite their knowing (the truth). Imām Ja‘far as-Ṣādiq was asked concerning the saying of Allah, the Mighty and Glorious: “And (did We not) guide him to the parting of the two mountain paths?” [90, 10]. He said: (This refers to) the path of righteousness and the path of wickedness. And he said: That which Allah has kept from the knowledge of human beings is entirely set apart from them. And he also said: Allah has adduced reasons to mankind [103] for what He has given them and what He has made known to them.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> This verse is not easy to render into the English language, and should be read with the previous clause. Pickthall has “The nature (framed) of Allah, in which He hath created men”; Rodwell, “the faith which God hath made, and for which He hath made man”; Palmer, “(according to) the constitution whereon God has constituted man”; Muhammad Ali, “the nature made by Allah in which He has made men”. In my rendering I have tried to emphasize the idea that God has created man with a *natural disposition* to accept the true religion.

<sup>2</sup> Here D has <sup>أيضاً</sup> الصادق ع erroneously, instead of <sup>الصادق</sup> ع, see p. 25<sub>3</sub>.

<sup>3</sup> That is, the soul.

<sup>4</sup> The opening sentence in this section may be compared with the orthodox Sunnite view in *Fiqh Akbar* II, MC, 190-191, art. 6. The

## CHAPTER 9

THE BELIEF IN THE CAPACITY (OF HUMAN BEINGS) (*al-istiṭṭā'a*)

The Shaykh Abū Ja'far, may Allah have mercy on him, said: Our belief regarding this (question) is what Imām Mūsā b. Ja'far al-Kāzīm, on both of whom be peace, said, when he was asked, "Has a human being (lit. the slave) capacity?" He said: Yes, provided he possesses four characteristics—(he should be) free in respect of action;<sup>1</sup> in good health; complete in the possession of limbs, and in the possession of capacity given him by Allah. Now when all these qualities coexist, then the man is said to be capable (*mustaṭṭi'*). He was asked, "For instance?" and the Imām said: (Suppose) there is a man who is free to act, in good health, possessing normal limbs. It is not possible for him to fornicate unless he sees a woman.<sup>2</sup> Now when he meets the woman, it may either be that he is chaste, and prevents himself (from sin) as did Joseph, on whom be peace; or that he may act freely with her and fornicate and then he is a fornicater. He cannot be said to have obeyed Allah under compulsion (in the first case); nor can he be said to have disobeyed Him by being overpowered (in the second case).<sup>3</sup>

And Imām Ja'far as-Ṣādiq was asked concerning the saying of Allah the Mighty and Glorious: "And they had been summoned to prostrate themselves while they were yet unhurt" [68, 43]. He said: (That is) they were capable of acting as they were commanded and of abstaining from that which was prohibited,

discussion of Wensinck (op. cit.) leaves nothing to add, except that the Ithnā 'Asharite view is allied to the Mu'tazilite. Cp. the Ismā'ili discussion of *fitra*, *FC*, §§3, 16, 65, where it is the *fitra* which is the proof of the existence of God and of *nubuwwa*. For a philological discussion see Jeffery, *Foreign Vocabulary of the Qur'an*, 221. In *Tawhīd*, 266 sqq., a tradition is related describing *fitra* as *islām*; this may be compared with the view of Nawawī, *MC*, 44, and of the *ḥadīth*, *ibid.*, 215.

<sup>1</sup> *mukhalla as-sarb* is employed for animals let loose for roaming freely in pasture land.

<sup>2</sup> Reading ةَرَبْ with D, not ةَرَبْ as in N.

<sup>3</sup> *Tawhīd*, 279-280.

and for this reason they were tested.<sup>1</sup> And Imām Abū Ja'far (Muhammad al-Bāqir) on whom be peace, said: In the Torah it is written “O Moses (says Allah), verily I have created thee and chosen thee and guided thee and given thee strength and commanded thee to obey Me, and prohibited thee from disobeying Me. Now if thou wilt obey Me, I shall help thee towards My obedience; but if thou wilt disobey Me, I shall not aid thee in thy disobedience to Me. It is for Me to show kindness to thee in respect of thy obedience; and it is for Me to charge thee for thy disobedience to Me”.<sup>2</sup>

## CHAPTER 10

### THE BELIEF REGARDING THE SOURCE OF CREATION (*mabda'*)

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far: The Jews believe that Allah, [104] Who is Blessed and Exalted above all, has (after creating the universe) relinquished the affair (of creation). But we say that He, Who is Exalted above all, “Every day He exerciseth (universal) power” [55, 29]. One particular affair does not distract Him from another.<sup>3</sup> He quickens and kills, He creates and sustains and acts as He wills. We say: “Allah effaceth what He will, and establisheth (what He will), and with Him is the Mother of the Book (*ummu'l-kitāb*)” [13, 39].<sup>4</sup> He destroys only that which exists and he creates only that which does not exist. This is not the (sort of) creation in which the Jews and those that follow them believe.

<sup>1</sup> *Tawhīd*, 280.

<sup>2</sup> The question of *istīṭā'a* is intimately connected with free will and predestination. The views of al-Qummī go further than most authorities. Analysing Wensinck's discussion, there may really be three positions: (1) Man's activity is not real but only metaphorical (Jabrites); (2) Man's capacity differs in respect of good and evil actions (Ash'arites; see also *MC*, 266, art. 19); and (3) Complete capacity (Mu'tazilites, Shi'ites)—and apparently al-Qummi takes the last position. *MC*, 128 (art. 15). 157, 266; *BHA*, §§115–122, particularly 119. *Tawhīd*, 277–284.

<sup>3</sup> *Tawhīd*, 271.

<sup>4</sup> Or “source of ordinance” (Pickthall); or of “revelation” (Palmer).

يُعنى في أصل الكتاب بـ*بريد المروح المحفوظ* أم الكتاب By *MB* understands:

The Jews ascribe to us this doctrine of creation<sup>1</sup> and the different schismatics who oppose us follow them in this matter. Imām Ja'far as-Ṣādiq said: Allah never sent a prophet (*nabī*) until He obtained from him the covenant for restricting his worship to Him alone, and for rejecting (His) equals (*nidd*, pl. *andād*). And He, the most Exalted, retards what He wills, and advances what He wills.<sup>2</sup> An instance of this is that He abrogated (previous) faiths and commands by the faith of our Prophet and his ordinances. Another instance (of *bad'*) is the supersession of the Books by the Qur'ān.

And as-Ṣādiq says: He who asserts that Allah the Mighty and Glorious does something new which He did not know before,—from him I dissociate myself. And he said: He who asserts that Allah, after doing something, repents concerning it,—then he, in our opinion, is a denier of Allah the Great.<sup>3</sup>

And as for the saying of Imām Ja'far as-Ṣādiq, peace be on him, that nothing appeared to Allah concerning any matter, as it appeared to Him as regards my son Ismā'il,—verily he (Imām Ja'far) says: Nothing manifested (itself) from (the will of) Allah, Glory be to Him, concerning any affair, as that which appeared regarding my son Ismā'il when He cut him off by death<sup>4</sup> before me, so that it may be known that he was not the Imām after me.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> فَنَبَّأَنَا (نَبَّأَنَا) الْيَهُودُ لِنَهْمَمُ أَنَّهُ D ; فَنَسِبُنَا فِي ذَلِكَ إِلَى القُولِ بِالْبَدَاءِ أَخْ N

فِي ذَلِكَ إِلَى القُولِ بِالْبَدَاءِ أَخْ

<sup>2</sup> *Tawhīd*, 269.

<sup>3</sup> *Tawhīd*, 271.

<sup>4</sup> إِذَا أَخْتَرَهُمْ أَخْ N

<sup>5</sup> *Tawhīd*, 268-272; *MC*, 75 sqq., 188 sqq., 193, 210, 228 sqq.; *BHA*, §§66-82; *FC*, §§19-22; *Affifi*, 10 sqq., 28-29. Creation, its cause, result and true meaning, has always been a moot point with the *mutakallimūn*. The whole position is summarized in a masterly fashion by Wensinck (*MC*, particularly, 75-78, 228-229). The logical Aristotelian view, that if God was creating the world from eternity, the world itself is eternal, was denied by the formula "Allah was Creator before He created". *MC*, 193, *Fiqh Akbar* II, art. 16.

The Ithnā 'Ashari view is clear, that God is continually creating and nothing else can claim eternity. The Ismā'ili view differs widely. See *FC*, §§19-22. *Ibdā'*, *creatio ex nihilo*, is something quite different from

## CHAPTER 11

THE BELIEF CONCERNING ABSTENTION FROM DISPUTATION  
*(jadal)* AND CONTENTION (*mirā'*) ABOUT  
 ALLAH

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far, may Allah have mercy on him: Disputation (*jadal*) [105] concerning Allah is prohibited, because it leads to that which does not befit Him.<sup>1</sup> And Imām Ja'far as-Ṣādiq was asked concerning the saying of Allah, the Mighty and Glorious: "And that thy Lord, He is the goal" [53, 43]. He said: When conversation turns towards (a discussion of) Allah, then refrain (from speech). And as-Ṣādiq used to say: O son of Adam! if a bird were to eat your heart, it would not satisfy it! and as for your sight—if the eye of a needle were to be placed upon it, it would be darkened. And you desire (despite such insignificance) to know the sovereignty of the heavens and the earth! If you are truthful, here is the sun, one of Allah's creations; fill your eye with it, and then it will be as you say.

And vain disputation is prohibited concerning all matters of faith. The Prince of Believers, on whom be peace, has said: He who seeks after religion by disputation will become a heretic (*zindiq*).<sup>2</sup>

And Imām Ja'far as-Ṣādiq has said that the people who indulge in vain disputations (*ashābu'l-kalām*)<sup>3</sup> will perish, and the Muslims will be saved. Verily the Muslims are noble (*najib*, pl. *nujabā'*). Now as for controversy against opponents by means of the word of Allah and the Prophet and the Imāms, or by means of the significance of their sayings, it is

*khalq* or *bad'*. The Creator is the intermediary, not the Unknowable Absolute, *mubdi'*. This intermediary is the *aqlu'l-awwal*. Ibnu'l-'Arabī derived much from the Ismā'ili concepts, *Affifi*, 186.

<sup>1</sup> The Urdu translator explains (p. 29), that what is prohibited is vain disputation, the only object of which is to silence the opponent, and not a sincere quest after truth.

<sup>2</sup> See *EI*, iv. 1228 (L. Massignon). Here it clearly means a heretic, one who strays from the right path.

<sup>3</sup> Perhaps this is a hit against the *mutakallimūn*.

allowed without restriction to him who is well-versed in theology (*kalām*), but is not permitted (*mahzūr*) to him who is not well-versed in it and totally forbidden (*muharram*).

And Imām Ja'far as-Ṣādiq said: Controvert the people with my sayings, and if they overcome you by argument, it will be I who will be controverted, not you. It is related from him that he said: Speaking in (defence of) the truth is better than silence in respect of falsehood. And it is related that Abū'l-Hudhayl al-‘Allāf said to Hishām b. al-Ḥakam: I wish to have a controversy with you on the condition that if you overcome me, I shall adopt your faith; and if I overcome you, you must accept mine. Hishām said [106]: You have not dealt justly with me. Nay, I will have a controversy with you on the condition that if I overcome you, you will accept my faith; but if you overcome me, I shall refer to my Imām (for a proper answer).<sup>1</sup>

## CHAPTER 12

### THE BELIEF CONCERNING THE TABLET (*lawh*) AND THE PEN (*qalam*)

Says the Shaykh: Our belief concerning the Tablet (*lawh*) and the Pen (*qalam*) is that they are two angels.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> This is not an important article of faith and it is surprising that so much space, consisting mainly of *riwāyāt*, should be devoted to it. Although rationalist discussion is discountenanced (*MC*, 54, 112, 113), nothing like this is to be found either in Wensinck or *BHA*. For a fuller discussion, see *Tawhīd*, 370-376.

<sup>2</sup> The Urdu translator protests against this extraordinary proposition, and says as follows (D, 31): "Shaykh Mufid says that to think that the *lawh* (tablet) and the *qalam* (pen) are two angels is contrary to the true belief, because it is clear from several traditions that the *lawh* is a book in which God has, in His power, written down all events that are to happen till the day of resurrection. Also in the Qur'ān we have: 'And verily We have written in the Psalms (*zabūr*), after the Reminder: My righteous slaves shall inherit the earth' (cp. Psalms, xxxvii. 29) [21, 105]. That is to say, 'We have written after the reminder, on account of Our Power, that My righteous slaves shall inherit the earth'. In this verse by *dhikr* is meant the *lawh*. And *qalam* is the name of that thing by the instrumentality of which the events of the time and the happenings of the world are inscribed. When God intended to acquaint the angels

## CHAPTER 13

THE BELIEF REGARDING THE CHAIR (*kursī*)<sup>1</sup>

Says the Shaykh: Our belief concerning the Chair (*kursī*) is that it is the receptacle of all the creatures, including the Throne ('*arsh*), the heavens, the earth and everything else created by Allah. Now *kursī* according to another interpretation is knowledge ('*ilm*). Imām Ja'far as-Ṣādiq was asked concerning the saying of Allah, the Mighty and Glorious: "His Chair (*kursī*) embraceth the heavens and the earth" [2, 256]. He said: It (*kursī*) is His '*ilm* (knowledge).<sup>2</sup>

with some secret of His, or to send revelations to one of the prophets, the angels were commanded to read the *lawh*. Shaykh Ṣadūq himself, while describing the manner in which revelation was sent down, writes that there was a *lawh* in front of the two eyes of Isrāfil. When Allah desired to send a revelation, the *lawh* would be brought in contact with his forehead. Thus it is apparent that *lawh* is not the name of an angel, nor do we find in any dictionary that *lawh* and *qalam* are two angels".

This is a very interesting refutation of the Shaykh's doctrine by his disciple, Sh. Mufid (for whom see *Rawḍātu'l-Jannāt*, 563). Unfortunately the original text of the *Taṣhīh* on the point is not available to me. *MB* also mentions that such is the belief of Sh. Ṣadūq.

In Sunnite theology the meaning of *lawh* is quite different. It is of vast dimensions, of white pearl, and contains a record of everything from beginning to end (*MC*, 148). The Pen however was created before and has priority (*ibid.*, 162). Two ideas emerge: (a) the Tablet as the original copy of the Revelation, and (b) as the record of the decisions of the Divine Will (*EI*, iii. 19-20). According to Western Ismā'īlis, *qalam* is the primal source of the universe (*FC*, 21), and *lawh* is the most guarded Tablet (*ibid.*, 86). The Ismā'īli influence can be seen in Ibnu'l-'Arabī. He uses *qalam*, *lawh* and '*arsh* for the Neo-Platonic First Intellect, Universal Soul and Universal Body, respectively (*Affifi*, 63, n. 1; 67).

<sup>1</sup> For *kursī*, see Cl. Huart in *EI*, ii. 1156. Usually translated "throne" (Jeffery, 249); but "chair" (*kursī*) as distinguished from "throne" ('*arsh*) is probably better, *MC*, 147-148.

<sup>2</sup> Huart explains the difficulty experienced by the early authorities in explaining *kursī* as distinguished from '*arsh* (*EI*, ii. 1156). *Kursī* has also been explained as the "stool" of the throne ('*arsh*). The allegorical interpretation, '*ilm*', is the same as found in the *tafsīr* of Tabarī.

Allah's sitting on the throne is a quality (*MC*, 93) and belief in the sitting is an article of faith (*ibid.*, 127; *Waṣṣ Abī Han.* art. 8). But it is a difficult matter and must not be discussed (*ibid.*, 266; *Fiqh Akbar* III, art. 12). A man who says that he does not know whether God's Throne

## CHAPTER 14

## THE BELIEF CONCERNING THE THRONE ('arsh)

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far: Our belief concerning the Throne ('arsh) is that it is something which is carried or supported by the whole of creation.<sup>1</sup> And 'arsh according to another interpretation is knowledge ('ilm). And as-Ṣādiq, on whom be peace, was asked (the meaning of) the saying of Allah, the Mighty and Glorious: "The Beneficent One, Who is established on the Throne" [20, 4].<sup>2</sup> He said: He is equidistant<sup>3</sup> from

is in the Heavens or Earth is an infidel (*MC*, 116, *Fiqh Akbar* I, art. 9). The details of the Throne ('arsh) and Chair (*kursī*) are very picturesque. The Preserved Tablet is attached to the throne; the Throne is created from God's Light; the Chair is attached to the Throne; "and all water is within the chair, and the water is on the back of the wind" (*MC*, 148). A tradition from Abū Dharr al-Ghifārī says: The Apostle of Allah said: O Abū Dharr, the seven Heavens are, as compared with the Chair, like a ring thrown away in the desert. And the relation between the Throne and the Chair is as the relation between this desert and the ring (*MC*, 149).

Apparently *BHA* and *FC* do not even mention the Chair. The explanations in *Kalāmī Pīr* are fascinating. *Kursī* is the Prophet, *nabī* (57); it refers also to the soul of men (92); the anthropomorphists are "like animals that look for the rind and chaff, and never get to the fruit and grain" (59). Cp. *Tawhīd*, Bāb 51, pp. 265-266.

<sup>1</sup> Reading with N حَنَةَ جَمِيعِ الْأَنْقَاصِ ; D omits حَنَةَ.

<sup>2</sup> This passage (Qur. 20, 4) is explained in *Tawhīd*, 258. Cf. Al's philosophical explanation to the Christian, p. 259. "He who asserts that God is part of (*min*) a thing, or in (*fī*) a thing, or above ('*alā*) a thing, he verily has associated (some one with Allah)", 260. Allah's eminence is allegorical, 261, line 2; these expressions have no reference to bodily existence, *ibid.*, lines 6-7. The next section, bāb ٤٨, p. 261, explains Qur. 11, 9, "and His Throne was upon the water". Water was created prior to the heavens and earth. The 'arsh is described in bāb ٤٩, p. 263. *Kursī* is the outward gate, الْبَابُ الْبَاطِنُ and 'arsh, the inward gate, Bāb ٤٩, p. 265, describes that the 'arsh was the fourth of created things, the first three being (1) Atmosphere (*al-hawā'*), (2) the Pen (*al-qalam*), and (3) the Light (*an-nūr*).

<sup>3</sup> The Imām takes the literal meaning of *istawā*, i.e. to be or make oneself equal to, or in respect of, something. The relationship of Allah to each one of His creatures is *equal*, that of the Creator to the created.

everything, and not a single thing is nearer to Him than another. Now that 'arsh,<sup>1</sup> which is supported by the whole of creation,<sup>2</sup> is borne by eight angels, each possessing eight eyes, each eye as large as the world. One of the angels is of human shape, and he asks Allah to provide daily bread for the sons of Adam. The second is of the shape of a bull, and he asks Allah to provide daily bread for all beasts. And the third is of the shape of a lion, and he asks Allah to provide daily bread for all beasts of prey. And the fourth is of the shape of a fowl, and he asks Allah to provide sustenance for all birds. [107]

Today there exist four angels, but when the Day of Resurrec-

tion comes, they will become eight in number.

The 'arsh which means knowledge is borne by four amongst the ancients and four amongst the later ones; the former ones are Noah, Abraham, Moses and Jesus, on all of whom be peace; and the later are Muhammad, 'Ali, Hasan, and Husayn, the blessings of Allah upon them. This is what has been handed down from the Imāms by a reliable chain of authorities concerning the Throne and its bearers.

Now the reason why these persons became the bearers of the 'arsh, that is the knowledge (of Allah), is that the ancient

<sup>1</sup> Here the translator has an interesting note. He says "Sh. Mufid, on whom be peace, writes that the literal meaning of 'arsh is sovereignty (سلطنة) and kingdom (ملك), and that 'arsh which is carried by angels is in the seventh heaven, and that is only a portion of the 'arsh which means 'kingdom'. This much belief concerning 'arsh is sufficient and the tradition, by which Sh. Ṣadūq has described the qualities and the appearance of the angels carrying the 'arsh, is one which has come down through a single source (حديث أحاد). Therefore to believe in the qualities of the angels, to believe in the tradition as having been handed down from the Imāms and to believe that the angels who carry the 'arsh have the appearance as described in the *hadīth*, all this is not necessary. What is certain is that which we have related. The translator, Badāyūni".

<sup>2</sup> Here there is a variation in the texts: N العرش الذي حملة جمع الخلق D العرش الذي جملة جمع الخلق If *jumlatu* be adopted as the correct reading—and there are good grounds to do so—the meaning would be "that 'arsh which is the sum and substance of creation . . .".

prophets, who lived prior to our Prophet Muḥammad, namely, Noah, Abraham, Moses and Jesus, brought four different faiths. It was through these that the true knowledge passed to them (i.e. Muḥammad, 'Ali, etc.). Similarly the true knowledge was transmitted after Muḥammad, by 'Alī, Hasan and Husayn to those amongst the Imāms who came after Husayn.<sup>1</sup>

## CHAPTER 15

### THE BELIEF CONCERNING SOULS (*nufūs*) AND SPIRITS (*arwāh*)<sup>2</sup>

Says the Shaykh, may the mercy of Allah be on him: Our belief regarding souls (*nafs*, pl. *nufūs*) is that they are the spirits

<sup>1</sup> The meaning of 'arsh as knowledge was ascribed to it only in order to bring in the prophets and Imāms, who were considered to be the torch-bearers of the light of knowledge—a beautiful simile, deriving its origin from the remote past, and dear to the heart of the artistic Persian.

For 'arsh, see *MB*, 355. In Sunnite theology, the 'arsh may be a seat of light or a red hyacinth (*MC*, 148), and "Allah created the preserved tablet from a white pearl, which is seven times longer than the distance between Heaven and earth, and attached it to the Throne". Also "Allah created the Throne from His Light, and the chair is attached to the throne, and all water is within the chair, and the water is on the back of the wind" (*loc. cit.*). "Round the throne are four rivers, and four angels stand over these rivers. The throne has tongues equal in number to the tongues of all creatures and all these praise God." "The Heavens are, as compared with the throne, like a lamp hanging between heaven and earth" (*loc. cit.*). It is therefore obvious that the 'arsh is something far more wonderful than the *kurst*.

According to Ibnu'l-'Arabi, 'arsh is the Universal Body (*Affifi*, 63, n. 1), or the Muḥammadan Logos (*ibid.*, 66, n. 1, No. (5)). The body of the Perfect Man is constituted of the 'arsh (p. 82). This is clearly under Ismā'ili influence, cf. creation of 'arsh, *Kalāmi Pīr*, 39; anthropomorphism is foolish, 59; 'arsh refers to the soul of man, 92.

<sup>2</sup> On *nafs* and *rūh* see the full discussion by E. J. Calverley in *EI*, iii. 827–830; *MB*, *rūh*, 184–187; *nafs*, 349–351; *Tahānawi*, *Dic. of Tech. Terms*, *rūh*, i. 540–547; *nafs*, ii. 1396–1403. *Nafs* is rendered *soul*, and *rūh*, *spirit*, by all modern authors, *Affifi* (index); Ivanow in *FC*, *nafs*, 11, 61; *rūh* (*āniyya*), 50. But frequently the terms are interchangeable, see Ivanow, *Kalāmi Pīr*, p. xlviii, etc., and also the use of the two terms by al-Qummi in the opening para of this section (Ch. 14).

Although it is difficult to lay down a hard and fast rule, it is probably correct to say generally that soul (*nafs*) represents "the animal life" in the human organism, while spirit (*rūh*) represents the "rational principle"

(*rūh*, pl. *arwāh*) by which life (*hayāt*) is maintained, and they were the first of created things. This follows from the saying of the Prophet, the blessings of Allah be upon him: The first things which Allah created out of nothing (*abda'a*)<sup>1</sup> were the blessed and pure souls (*al-muqaddasa*, *al-muṭahhara*) and compelled them to affirm His unity.<sup>2</sup> Thereafter He created (the rest of creation).

And concerning the souls, we believe that they were created for eternal existence (*baqā'*), and not for extinction (*fanā'*). For the Prophet has said: You were not created for extinction, but for eternal existence<sup>3</sup> and you will only be transferred from one

(Affifi, 120). For a contrary view, see Calverley in *EI*, iii. 828 (top). It appears therefore that three views are prevalent: (a) that *nafs* and *rūh* are synonymous, (b) that *nafs* represents the living, conscious principle, and *rūh*, the intelligent and rational principle of life, and (c) *vice versa*.

*Nafs* may be of five kinds: (1) *ammāra* (acting evilly); (2) *lawwāma* (the blaming one); (3) *muṭma'inna* (peaceful); (4) *rādiya* (satisfied); (5) *mardīya* (giving satisfaction), also called *mulhima* (*MB*, 350, mid.). On the five kinds of *rūh*, see below, note 2, page 52.

<sup>1</sup> بِدَاعٍ is strictly creation out of nothing, *creatio ex nihilo* (*MC*, 210 et seq.), whereas خلق appears to be akin to shaping, fashioning. The creation of matter out of nothing is *ibdā'*; the shaping of matter, created though shapeless, is *khalaq*. The word *khalaq* however is also used for *creatio ex nihilo*, *EI*, ii. 891, s.v. *khalk*. For the usual Shi'itic view, see *MB*, بَدَاعٍ and خلق. Among the Western Ismā'īlis the distinction between *ibdā'* and *khalaq* is very carefully preserved, *FC*, 11, 30 (§19), 32, etc.

<sup>2</sup> Reading with N فَانْطَهَا ; D err. فَانْتَهَى.

<sup>3</sup> On the indestructibility of the soul the Urdu translator has a very interesting note. He says "Sh. Mufid says that this is an isolated *hadīth* (*ahād*) [for such traditions see Abdur Rahim, *Muhammadan Jurisprudence*, 73 (top); Taftāzāī, *Talwīḥ* (Cairo, 1327 A.H.), 3 sqq.; Mu'ālimu'd-dīn fī'l-Uṣūl (Tehran, 1312 A.H.), 183; Aghnides, *Muhammadan Theories of Finance*, Introduction, p. 44, (2) and (3)]; it is not proved that it is an authentic report. It is not correct to believe that souls are not destructible, because in the Qur'ān we have: ' Every one that is thereon (the earth) will pass away; there remaineth but the countenance of thy Lord of Might and Glory ' [55, 26-27]. Therefore souls (*nūfūs*) will also perish. To believe in the perpetual existence of the soul is to accept the view of the Greek philosophers. It is possible that the tradition refers to the perpetual existence of those sanctified spirits whom Allah created first,

abode to another. Verily the souls are strangers in the earth [108] and imprisoned in the bodies. And our belief concerning them is that after their separation from the bodies, they survive, some of them in happiness, others in torment, until Allah, in His power, causes them to return to their bodies.

(Once upon a time) Jesus, the son of Mary, said to his disciples: I tell you, forsooth, nothing rises up to heaven except what has come down from it. And Allah, glorious be His praise, says: "And had We willed We would have raised him by their means (that is, by signs), but he clung to the earth and followed his own lust" [7, 175]. Therefore that soul among them which is not raised to the Divine Kingdom remains for ever hurled down in the burning fire (*hāwiya*).<sup>1</sup> And this is because both in Paradise and in Hell, there are stages.<sup>2</sup>

And the Mighty and Glorious says: "The angels and the Spirit ascend unto Him" [70, 4], and He says: "Lo! the righteous will dwell among gardens and rivers, firmly established in the favour of a Mighty King" [54, 54-55], and He says: "Think not of those who are slain in the way of Allah, as dead. Nay, they are living. With their Lord they provision. Jubilant (are they) . . . ." [3, 163-164]. And He says: "And call not those who are slain in the way of Allah dead" [2, 149]. And the Prophet said: The souls are like a collection of armed forces (*junūdun mujannadatūn*);<sup>3</sup> those among them that are well acquainted with one another are united; while those who are not, are disunited. And Imām Ja'far as-Sādiq has said:<sup>4</sup> Verily, Allah

---

and it is possible to support this by various traditions". MB has a very full discussion of *rūh* and *nafs*.

<sup>1</sup> *Hāwiya* is a word giving rise to much philological discussion. Jeffery, 285-286; 'Ajabnāma (A volume of Studies presented to E. G. Browne, Cambridge, 1922), 464-471.

<sup>2</sup> *Daraja* is one stage higher than another (in Heaven); and *daraka* is one stage lower than another (in Hell).

<sup>3</sup> MB, 211<sub>7-8</sub> explains the expression *mujannada* as *majmū'a*. The author also gives a long account of how the ranks of the angels are formed and mobilized.

<sup>4</sup> Here the translator says that the present *hadīth*, together with the one that precedes and the one that follows, is handed down from a single authority (*ahād*), and need not be accepted.

has inculcated fraternity between souls in the World of Shadows<sup>1</sup> two thousand years prior to the creation of bodies. If our Steadfast Ones (*qā'i imūnā*), the People of the House, had been present (at that time), verily the brother who had fraternized in the World of Shadows would have inherited in preference to the real brother.

And *as-Ṣādiq* has said: Verily the souls meet one another in the ethereal world (*al-hawā'*) and make enquiries<sup>2</sup> about one another. [109] When a soul from the earth approaches them, the souls (in the ethereal world) say: Leave it! for it has come from an awful place. Then they ask it: What did so and so do? Whenever the returned soul said, "He is alive", they hoped to meet him. And whenever the returned soul said that he had died, they said: He has perished, he has perished! And He, Who is Exalted above all, says: "And he on whom my wrath cometh is lost indeed" [20, 83], and He says: "As for him whose balances are light, his mother is *hāwiya*! And knowest thou what that is? A raging fire!"<sup>3</sup> [101, 6-8].

The story of the world and its inhabitants is the story of the ocean, the sailor and the ship. *Luqmān* said to his son: O my little one, verily the world is a deep sea, in which many people have perished.<sup>4</sup> So make faith (*īmān*) in Allah, the Mighty and Glorious, your ship in it; and the fear of Allah, your provision; and trust in Allah, your sail. And if you are saved, it will be by the mercy of Allah; and if you perish, it will be by your own sins, not because of Allah.

The most trying moments for the sons of Adam are three: the day of birth, the day of death and the day of resurrection. And Allah has greeted the Prophet *Yahyā* (John) with peace

<sup>1</sup> N err. ; D corr. الأَظْلَانَةَ ; so also Tehran ed. *MB*, s.v.

طلَّ، 502 (seventh line from bot.), explaining this *hadīth* says:

وَكَانَ الْمَرَادُ بِالْأَظْلَانَةِ عَالَمُ الْمَعْرَدَاتِ فِيهَا أَشْيَا. لَا كَأَلْشِيَا. فَلَيْسَ بِأَشْيَا كَمَا فِي الظَّلَّ اخْ.

<sup>2</sup> N err. ; تَسْأَلُ D.

<sup>3</sup> See note 1, p. 50 above.

<sup>4</sup> Reading with D قدْ هَلَكَ عَالَمٌ كَثِيرٌ N ; قدْ هَلَكَ فِيهِ عَالَمٌ كَثِيرٌ.

in these moments and said: "Peace on him the day he was born, and the day he dieth, and the day he shall be raised alive!" [19, 15]. And Jesus has greeted himself on these occasions and said: "Peace on me the day I was born, and the day I die, and the day I shall be raised alive!" [19, 34].

And the belief concerning the spirit is that it is not a kind of body, but is a different creation, on account of His word: "And then (We) produced it as another creation" [23, 14].<sup>1</sup>

And our belief concerning the prophets (*anbiyā'*), the apostles (*rusul*) and the Imāms is that there were five spirits within them: [110] the Holy Spirit (*rūhu'l-qudus*), the spirit of faith (-*imān*), the spirit of strength (-*quwwa*), the spirit of appetite (-*shahwa*) and the spirit of motion (-*mudraj*).<sup>2</sup> True believers (*mu'minīn*) possess four spirits: the spirit of faith (*imān*),

<sup>1</sup> This is explained in the *Majma'u'l-Bayān*, as the process of endowing the lifeless body with life (Urdu translator).

<sup>2</sup> The Urdu translator explains: The Holy Spirit (*qudus*) is a soul whereby the prophets and apostles know the realities of things. They do not need to think, nor to experience. The spirit of faith (*rūhu'l-imān*) is one with which a man worships God, and avoids both polytheism and atheism. The spirit of strength (*rūhu'l-quwwa*) is one whereby every living being tries to gain his livelihood, and repels the attacks of enemies. The spirit of passion (*rūhu'sh-shahwa*) leads one to desire food and drink, and makes the male seek the female and vice versa. The spirit of motion (*rūhu'l-mudraj*) is that whereby every living being moves and acts. This is the spirit which cares for the body; and when it lessens, leads to physical weakness, and its extinction means death.

*MB*, 185 (4th line from bot.) has 5 kinds of *rūh*: (1) *rūhu'l-qudus*, (2) -*imān*, (3) -*quwwa*, (4) -*shahwa*, (5) -*bādan*. The last is also called *mudraj*. The Prophets possess all five; true believers, the last four; and the Christians and Jews, the last three. Further explanation is given s.v. سبق, at p. 450, lines 5-15. According to the *Dict. of Tech. Terms*, i. 540-548, *rūh* is of three kinds: (1) *hayawānī*, (2) *nafsānī*, and (3) *tabī'i*. The relation between body, soul and spirit is explained as follows:

أجمع الجمهور على أن الروح معنى بمعنى بالجسد وفي الأصل الصنار ان النفس  
جسم كثيف والروح فيه جسم لطيف والعقل فيه جوهر نوراني (i. 542<sub>1-2</sub>). According  
to the *Mishkātu'l-Anwār* of al-Ghazālī (ibid., 543), we have the following  
nomenclature: (1) *rūhu'l-hassās*, (2) -*khayālī*, (3) -*aqlī*, (4) -*dhikrī* (*fikrī*),  
and -*qudusī* (or *nabawī*). Browne, iv. 389.

of strength (*quwwa*), of appetite (*shahwa*), and of motion (*mudraj*). The unbelievers and beasts possess three spirits: the spirits of strength, appetite and motion. And as for His saying, Exalted is He above all: "They will ask thee concerning the Spirit (*rūh*). Say: the Spirit is an affair of my Lord" [17, 87]. For verily it is a creation greater than Gabriel and Michael.<sup>1</sup> It always accompanies the Messenger of Allah and the angels and the Imāms, and it belongs to the celestial world (*malakūt*). I shall compose a work concerning this subject, in which I shall fully comment on the significance of these propositions.<sup>2</sup>

## CHAPTER 16

### THE BELIEF CONCERNING DEATH (*mawt*)

Says the Shaykh: The Prince of Believers, 'Alī, on whom be peace, was asked: Describe death to us. He said: You have, indeed, accidentally come to one who is well informed! It (death) brings to the person dying one of three things—either tidings of perpetual bliss, or of everlasting misery, or fear and dread. Or an uncertainty (*amrun mubhamun*), if he (the dying person) does not know to which section he belongs. Now as

<sup>1</sup> The Urdu translator says (p. 38, note) that *rūh* is an enormous angel and gives a graphic description of it.

<sup>2</sup> The Sunnite creeds studied by Wensinck apparently do not give such graphic descriptions of the soul and spirit. The traditions however do record a few details, Wensinck, *Handbook of Early Muhammadian Tradition*, s.v. "soul", 219. Neither in the *Tawḥīd*, nor in *BHA* is there any reference to these questions; but as to *nafsi ammāra*, see *BHA*, p. 97, note *a* to §139.

On Ibnu'l-'Arabī's notion of the soul generally, see Affifi, 120 sqq. and on spirit, 122. The spirit, according to Ibnu'l- Arabī, is "a simple substance, different from the dark and complex material substance"; "This substance is the chief of all the three souls and the prince (*amīr*) of all the powers which serve it and obey its commands" (loc. cit.). According to him the spirit (*rūh*) is "the rational principle, the sole purpose of which is to seek knowledge"; while the soul (*nafs*) is "the animal life in the human organism" (p. 120). This is generally the accepted view; per contra *Tāju'l-'Arūs*, cited in *EI*, iii. 828 (top), where *nafs* is applied to the mind, and *rūh* to life.

for our friend and the follower of our command, he will be the recipient of the good tidings of perpetual bliss; and as for our enemy and one who opposed our claim, he will be given tidings of eternal misery; but one whose affair is doubtful, that is one who does not know his own mind, he is a believer who is prodigal regarding his own affairs (*al-mu'min al-musrif 'alā nafsihi*), not knowing what his condition will be. Good comes to him after doubt and dread. Then Allah will never mingle him with our enemies, but will take him out of the Fire by our intercession. So act (righteously) and obey (Allah) and do not rely solely upon yourselves,<sup>1</sup> and do not belittle the punishment of Allah. [111] For verily, he, who does not obtain our intercession except after 300,000 years of Allah's chastisement, is to be counted amongst the wasteful (*musrifin*).<sup>2</sup>

Imām Ḥasan b. 'Alī b. Abī Ṭālib was asked: What is this death, concerning which people are ignorant? He said: It is the greatest joy which comes upon the believers when they go from this house of affliction to eternal bliss. And it is the greatest tribulation which comes upon the infidels when they go from their paradise (the earth) to a Fire which abates not, nor is it extinguished.

When Imām Ḥusayn b. 'Alī b. Abī Ṭālib was hard pressed,<sup>3</sup> those who were with him looked at him, and behold! he was totally different from them. Because when in great difficulty their colour changed and they trembled with fear,<sup>4</sup> and their hearts were filled with trepidation, and their sides began to throb, Imām Ḥusayn and some of his particular companions had bright faces, restful limbs<sup>5</sup> and complete peace of mind. Then some of them said to others: Look at him, he does not

<sup>1</sup> Reading with D. N omits على أنفسكم لا تتكلوا على أنفسكم.

<sup>2</sup> فَإِنْ مِنْكُمْ لَا تَلْهُجْ شَفَاعَتِنَا إِلَّا D; فَإِنْ مِنْ الْمُسْرِفِينَ مِنْ لَا تَلْهُجْ شَفَاعَتِنَا إِلَّا N

<sup>3</sup> This refers to the field of Kerbela on the 10th of Muharram, when the battle was raging fiercely.

<sup>4</sup> D err. فَرَأَتْهُمْ قَرَائِبَهُمْ for قَرَائِبَهُمْ

<sup>5</sup> Reading with D. N err. تَهْوِي جَوَارِحُهُمْ; تَهْدَى جَوَارِحُهُمْ "limbs outstretched"?

care for death. Then Ḥusayn said to them: Patience, O scions of nobility! For what is death, but a bridge by which you cross over from misfortune and harm to spacious gardens and eternal favours? Now which of you would dislike to proceed from a prison to a palace? And as for these, your enemies, they are like people who go from a palace to a prison and to a painful torment. Verily, concerning this my father ('Ali) related to me from my grandfather, the Messenger of Allah: Forsooth, the world is a prison for the believer and a paradise for the unbeliever; and death is the bridge for the former to their gardens, and for the latter, to their hell-fire. And he did not lie; nor do I.

Imām 'Ali (Zaynu'l-Ābidin) b. al-Ḥusayn was asked: What is death? He said: For the believer it is like taking off clothes which are dirty and lousy; [112] or breaking heavy shackles and fetters, and changing into the most gorgeous and perfumed of apparel, and (riding on) well-trained mounts, and (alighting in) familiar resting-places. And for the unbeliever, it is the pulling off of gorgeous apparel and changing into the most filthy and coarse clothing; and the transportation from familiar places to the wildest resting-places and the greatest torment.

Imām Muḥammad al-Bāqir was asked: What is death? He said: It is the sleep which comes to you every night, except that it is of long duration. The sleeper does not awake from it except on the day of Resurrection. Some see in their sleep certain kinds of joy the worth whereof cannot be estimated; others, certain kinds of terrors, which are beyond the pale of estimation. How then can his condition (be described) who may be happy or fearful in death? This then is death, so be prepared for it.

Imām Ja'far as-Ṣādiq was asked: Describe death to us. He said: To the believer it is like the most perfumed breeze, which he inhales and then doses off on account of the perfume, and his weariness and pain disappear from him. To the unbeliever it is like the biting of vipers and the stinging of scorpions; nay, it is even more painful.<sup>1</sup> He was then told: There are

<sup>1</sup> *MB*, 156<sub>27</sub>.

some people who say that it is more painful than being sawed (with a saw), or being cut by scissors, or being crushed (to death) by stones, or the circular motion by the pivots of hand-mills in the pupils of the eye. He, on whom be peace, said: Such is the travail of death on some of the unbelievers and sinners. Do you not see that among them are those who have witnessed such calamities? Now that death is more painful than this and is more painful than all the worldly torments.<sup>1</sup>

He was asked: Why is it that we see (occasionally) an unbeliever, who at the moment of death is not in pain, and who dies<sup>2</sup> while he is relating (stories) [113] or laughing or talking; and the same is the case with some believers. Again both among the believers and unbelievers there are some who endure hardships during the pangs of death. He said: Whatever happiness the believer enjoys is part of his early reward; and whatever pain he suffers is the forgiveness of his sins, so that he may arrive in the next world in a state of cleanliness, purity and spotlessness, fit for the reward of Allah, and without there being anything to keep him from it. And whatever of ease is to be found in the case of some unbeliever is the compensation for his good actions in this world, so that when he arrives in the next world, there remains naught to him save that which brings torment on him. And whatever of distress comes upon an unbeliever there (at the moment of death) is the commencement of the punishment of Allah, inasmuch as (the reward) of his good actions is at an end. That is because Allah, the Mighty and Glorious, is just and does not act wrongfully.

Imām Mūsā b. Ja'far al-Kāzim visited a person while he was perspiring during the pangs of death and unable to answer anyone who called him. (Seeing this the persons round about) said: O son of the Messenger of Allah, we wish to know what the condition of our friend is and what death is. He said: Verily death is a purifier, it purifies the believers from sins; and it is

فَذَلِكَمُ الَّذِي هُوَ أَشَدُ مِنْ N ; فَذَلِكَ الَّذِي هُوَ أَشَدُ مِنْ عَذَابَ الدُّنْيَا D  
هَذَا وَ هُوَ أَشَدُ مِنْ عَذَابَ الدُّنْيَا.

<sup>2</sup> Reading فَيُنْظَى.

the last pain which afflicts them,<sup>1</sup> and the atonement of the last sin (or burden) upon them; whereas death separates the unbelievers from their good actions, and is the last delight or favour or comfort which reaches them. It is the last reward in respect of their good acts. As for your companion, he is completely purged<sup>2</sup> from sins, and completely purified from crimes. He is cleansed so that he is pure—pure as a garment purified of its filth—and is made fit to associate with us, the People [114] of the House, in our house, the Abode of Eternity.

One of the companions of the Imām ‘Alī ar-Ridā, on whom be peace, fell ill. Imām ar-Ridā went to visit him and said to him: How do you find yourself? He said: I met death after you (left me),<sup>3</sup> meaning the severity of the pain which befell him. The Imām said: How did you find it?<sup>4</sup> He said: (It was) a severe pain. The Imām said: You did not meet death, but what befell you was something to warn and acquaint you with some of its aspects. Verily, mankind may be divided into two classes: those who find rest in death (*mustarīh bi'l-mawt*), and those who give rest (to others) by it (*mustarāh bi'l-mawt*).<sup>5</sup> So renew your faith in Allah, in the Prophethood (of Muhammad) and in the *walāya* (of the Imāms) and you will be among those who find

<sup>1</sup> N ملبيهم آخر الالم عليهم ; آخر الالم يصيبهم D.

<sup>2</sup> Lit. “ sifted with a sifting ”.

<sup>3</sup> In English one would say “ I had almost died after you left me ”.

فقال ع كيف لقيته، قال الع شديداً، فقال ع له ما لقيته و لكن لقيت D  
فقال ع له كيف لقيته، فقال ع له ما لقيته، و لكن لقيت N ; ما يدركه و يعرفك الح  
ما يدركه و يعرفك الح

<sup>5</sup> That is, the Evil-doers, whom death makes innocuous. The Urdu translator translates this phrase as follows: “ Men are of two kinds; one is he, who by death, obtains ease; and the other is he, who by his death, gives rest to others ”. Cp. *MB*, 187<sub>14</sub> sqq.

وفي حديث: ابن آدم مستريح و مستراح منه، قيل الوالو يبعى أو، يعني ابن آدم إماً مستريح و هو المؤمن من يستريح من تعب الدنيا الى رحمة الله، أو مستراح منه و هو الفاجر يستريح منه البلاد الح

rest in it (death). The man acted accordingly—and this story is long and we have taken from it what was necessary.

Imām Muḥammad b. ‘Alī b. Mūsā ar-Ridā was asked: What is the matter with these Muslims that they dislike death? He said: They are ignorant of it and therefore they dislike it. If they possessed knowledge of it, and were true friends (*awliyā’*) of Allah, they would love it,<sup>1</sup> and would surely know that the other world is better for them than this.

Then he (the Imām) said: O slave of God! Why does the child or the mad man refuse to take the medicine which cleanses his body and removes his pain? The questioner said: Because they are ignorant of the benefits of the medicine.

He (Imām ar-Ridā) said: I swear by Him Who sent Muḥammad as a prophet of truth, may the peace and blessings of Allah be on him, verily as for those who prepare themselves for death as they really should, death will be more beneficial to them for curing themselves than this medicine. Lo! if only they knew what blessings death would bring them, they would call out for it and desire it even more than the wise and resolute man (*hāzim*) desires his medicine for the removal of his calamities and the recovery of his well-being.

Imām ‘Alī b. Muḥammad (b. ‘Alī b. Mūsā ar-Ridā) once visited one of his companions who was weeping and wailing [115] for fear of death. Thereupon he, peace be on him, said: O slave of Allah, you fear death because you do not possess any knowledge about it. What say you?—When you find your clothes filthy and loathsome<sup>2</sup> and you suffer from excess of filth and dirt, and are full of wounds and scabs, and you know that a bath in a public bath (*hammām*) will remove all these from you, would you not wish to enter it and bathe so that all that filth may disappear? And would you not like to enter the bath so that the wounds and scabs should disappear from you? The man said: Yea, O son of the Messenger of Allah.

<sup>1</sup> Reading with D and T; نَحْنُ لَا حَبُوبٌ; N.

<sup>2</sup> Reading with N and T; وَسَخَ (زَادَ تَسْخَتْ); D.

The Imām said: This death is the *hammām*, and it is the last portion of what remains against you of the forgiveness of your sins and your purification from your evil actions. For when you will enter upon it (death) and cross over it, you will be saved from all grief and anxiety and injury, and you will have attained complete joy and gladness. Then the man became quiet and cheerful and resigned himself, and closed his eyes and went on his way.

And Imām Ḥasan b. ‘Alī<sup>1</sup> was asked concerning death and he said: It is the verification of things that have not yet happened. My father has reported a tradition to me concerning it. He (my father) related from his father, (who related in turn) from his grandfather, (who related in turn) from Imām Ja‘far as-Ṣādiq, that he said: Verily the true believer, when he dies, dies not in fact; it is the unbeliever who really dies, for Allah the Mighty and Glorious says: “Thou bringest the living out of the dead, and Thou bringest the dead out of the living” [3, 26; cp. 6, 95; 10, 32; 30, 18]; that is, the true believer from the unbeliever, and the unbeliever from the true believer. And he (Imām Ja‘far) said: There came a man to the Prophet and said, “I do not know what has happened to me that I do not like death”. The Prophet said: Have you any property? The man replied, “Yes”. The Prophet said: Have you ever made offerings in charity? He said: “No”. The Prophet said: It is on this account that you dislike death.

And he (Imām Ja‘far) said: A man went [116] to Abū Dharr (al-Ghifārī) and asked: Why is it that we dislike death? He said: Because you have built for this world and ruined (your prospects for) the next, and men dislike to shift from a settled habitation to a ruin.

And he (Abū Dharr) was asked: What do you think of our return to Allah, Who is Exalted above all? He said: As for the virtuous, he will be like one who being absent returns to his own people. And as for the wicked, he will be like a runaway slave returning to his master in fear and dread. He was asked: What think you of our plight before Allah? He said: Judge

<sup>1</sup> D adds al-‘Askari.

of your actions in terms of the Book of Allah<sup>1</sup> when it says: " Surely amid delights shall the righteous dwell, and verily the impure in Hell-fire " [86, 13-14]. Said a man: Then where is the mercy of Allah ? He said: " Verily the mercy of Allah is nigh unto the righteous " [7, 54].<sup>2</sup>

## CHAPTER 17

### THE BELIEF CONCERNING THE QUESTIONING (*musā'ala*) IN THE GRAVE

Says the Shaykh, may the mercy of Allah be upon him : Our belief concerning the questioning in the grave is that it is true and that there is no escape from it. He who answers in the proper manner will obtain rest and perfume in his grave, and the Garden of Delight in the life to come. And he who does not answer in the proper manner, for him (there will be) the " feast of boiling water " [56, 93]<sup>3</sup> in his grave, and the roasting in hell-fire in the next world. Most of the torment of the grave takes place on account of backbiting and rudeness and making light of (the impurity of) urine. The severest form of torment that is inflicted in the grave on the rightful believer is like the (involuntary) trepidation of the eyelid or scarification.<sup>4</sup> These torments are in expiation of sins for which his anxieties and griefs and diseases and the excess of pain at the moment of death did not atone.

Verily the Messenger of Allah, on whom be His blessings and peace, shrouded Fātima bint Asad, mother of the Prince of Believers ('Alī b. Abī Tālib), in his own shirt [117] after the women had finished bathing her and carried her bier on his

<sup>1</sup> Lit. " Present your actions to the Book of Allah ".

<sup>2</sup> On *mawt* see *MB*, 156. Detailed descriptions of death are generally not to be found in other creeds.

<sup>3</sup> N, D, and T have نَزَلَ مِنْ حَمِيمٍ, meaning " descent ". But نَزَلَ as in Qur. 56, 93 is the correct reading.

<sup>4</sup> Refers to the practice of making slight incisions for drawing blood which are not very painful.

own shoulders.<sup>1</sup> He continued to carry the bier until it was brought to her grave. The Prophet then lay himself down in it, and rising, he took her in his arms and laid her in the grave. Thereafter he stooped over her, whispering for a long time and saying to her: Thy son, thy son. He then came out (of the grave) and levelled the earth over her. Then he stooped over her grave and people heard him say: There is no deity other than Allah. O God, verily I commend her to Thee. Then he returned and the believers said: O Messenger of Allah, verily we saw you doing something which you have never done before. He said: Today I have lost the grace of Abū Tālib. For, in respect of aught that she possessed, Fātima used to prefer me both to herself and her children. One day I spoke to her of the Day of Resurrection, and how the people will rise naked, and she said: Woe to my (naked) body! And I assured her that Allah would resurrect her fully clothed. And I spoke to her of the straitness of the grave, and she said: Woe to my distress!<sup>2</sup> And I assured her that Allah the Exalted would protect her from it. Wherefore did I shroud her in my own shirt and reclined in her grave, and stooped over her and instructed her regarding the matters about which she would be questioned. She was asked about her Lord, and she said: My Lord is Allah. And she was asked about her Prophet and she replied: Muhammad. And she was asked about her Imām and *wāli* (guardian), and she faltered and paused. And I said to her: Thy son, thy son. So she said: My Imām is my son. Thereupon they (the two angels) departed from her, and said: We have no power over you. Sleep, even as a bride sleeps in her inner apartment. Then she died a second death [118] and the verification of this is in the Book of Allah: "They say: Our Lord! Twice hast thou made us die, and twice hast thou made us live. Now we confess our sins. Is there any way to go out?" [40, 11].<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> For a similar tradition in Qādī Nu'mān's *Da'ā'imul-Islām*, see Fyzee, *Ismaili Law of Wills*, §29.

<sup>2</sup> نَعَمَاءَ وَنَعَمَاءَ ; D

<sup>3</sup> The translator explains that the belief in two deaths, one in this world, and another in the grave, is well established. See also *MB*, s.v.

## CHAPTER 18

THE BELIEF CONCERNING RESURRECTION (*raj'a*)<sup>1</sup>

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far: Our belief concerning resurrection is that it is a fact. Verily Allah, the Mighty and Glorious, has said in His Mighty Book: "Bethink thou (O Muhammad) of those of old, who went forth from their habitations in their thousands,<sup>2</sup> fearing death, and Allah said unto them: Die, and then He brought them back to life" [2, 244]. These people were the residents of 70,000 houses, and they were visited by the plague each year. The rich, on account of their opulence, used to go out; while the poor would remain on account of their poverty. So the plague used to attack lightly those that went; while it raged severely among those that remained. Now those that remained would say: If only we had departed, surely the plague would not have come upon us. And those that went would say: Had we stayed, it would have attacked us, even as it has attacked them. So they all agreed to depart from their houses collectively when the time of the plague was nigh. Then they all went out and camped on the banks (of a river).<sup>3</sup> And when they had put down their belongings, Allah cried to them: Die, and they perished, one and all. And the passers-by swept them off from the road, and they remained in that condition as long as Allah willed. One of the prophets of Israel named Jeremiah passed by them. He said: If Thou wildest, O my Lord, Thou couldst revivify them so that they may inhabit Thy cities,<sup>4</sup> and beget Thy slaves, and worship Thee with those who worship Thee. And Allah through a revelation asked him: Do

موت. The questioning in the grave by the two angels Munkar and Nakir is well established in Sunnite creeds: *MC*, 129, arts. 18 and 19; 163-167; 195, art. 23; 268, art. 27. For the philosophical Ismā'ili explanation, see *FC*, §§93, 94.

<sup>1</sup> Cp. *Wasiyat Abī Hanīfa*, art. 23, cited in *MC*, 130 and discussed at p. 178. Affifi, 166, gives a philosophical explanation; *BHA*, §219 et seq.; *FC*, §§81, 93, 94.

<sup>2</sup> The reference is to the Exodus.

<sup>3</sup> N على شطط حـرـ ; D على شطـ.

<sup>4</sup> Here N adds و يلـدوـا عـبـادـكـ و يـعـدـونـكـ مـعـ من يـعـدـكـ أـخـ.

you wish that for your sake I should bring them back to life ? The Prophet said: Yea, O my Lord. So Allah revivified them for his sake and sent them with him.

[119] Now these people died and returned to the world and (again) they died at their appointed times. Allah says: "Or (bethink thee of) the like of him (the Prophet Ezra) who, by passing a township which had fallen in utter ruin,<sup>1</sup> exclaimed, How shall Allah give life to this city, after it has been dead ? And Allah caused him to die (for the space of) a hundred years, and then brought him back to life. Allah said: How long hast thou tarried ? He (the man) said: I have tarried a day or a part of a day. He said: Nay, but thou hast tarried for a hundred years. Just look at thy food and drink, they have not rotted ! And look at thine ass ! so that We may make thee a token unto mankind; and look at thy bones, how We adjust them and then cover them with flesh ! And when (the matter) became clear unto him, he said: I know now that Allah hath power to do all things " [2, 261]. And so their prophet remained dead for a hundred years, then he returned to the world and remained therein, and then died at his appointed term. He was Ezra, but it is also related that he was Jeremiah.

And Allah, Exalted is He, in the story of those that were selected among the Bani Isrā'il of the community of Moses for the appointed term of his Lord, says: "Then We raised you to life after ye had been dead, that haply ye might give thanks " [2, 53]. And that was because when they heard the Word of Allah, they said: We shall not believe in its truth until we see Allah clearly. So, on account of their wrong-doing the thunder-bolt fell upon them and they perished. Moses said: O my Lord, what shall I say to the Bani Isrā'il when I return to them ? Then Allah revived them and they returned to the world; they ate and drank and married women and begat children, and lived in the world and died at their appointed times.

And Allah said unto Jesus, son of Mary: (Remember the time) when you caused the dead to live<sup>2</sup> by My command, and

<sup>1</sup> Lit. " it was falling on its roofs ".

<sup>2</sup>: تخرج الموتى بِأذنِي D citing Qur. 5, 110 ; تحيي الموتى N

all the dead who were revived by Jesus by the command of Allah returned to the world and lived therein so long as they lived, and then they died [120] at their appointed times.

And as for the Companions of the Cave (*ashābu'l-kahf*), "they tarried in their Cave three hundred years and nine years over" [18, 24]. Then Allah revived them and they returned to the world in order that they might question one another; and their story is well known.<sup>1</sup>

And if a questioner were to ask: Verily Allah, Exalted is He, says: "And thou wouldest have deemed them waking though they were asleep" [18, 17]. (Then, how can there be resurrection of those that slumber?) To him it may be answered: Verily they were dead; for Allah the Mighty and Glorious has said: "Woe upon us! Who hath raised us from our place of sleep? This is that which the Beneficent did promise, and the messengers spoke truth" [36, 52]. And if they (the unbelievers) say: That is so (that is, if the unbelievers say that this refers to the resurrection of the dead); (then we say) verily the Companions of the Cave were also dead. There are many examples of this kind. Thus it is established that resurrection did take place among the peoples of the past. For the Prophet, on whom be peace, has said: There will occur among these people (the like of) what has occurred among previous peoples, even as one horseshoe resembles another, or as one arrow feather follows another.<sup>2</sup> Wherefore, according to this premise, it is necessary to believe that resurrection (*raj'a*) will take place in this community as well.

<sup>1</sup> The Urdu translator citing the *Tafsīr Majma'u'l-Bayān* says that their eyes were open and they were breathing regularly. Therefore they were not dead, and this verse cannot strictly speaking be cited in proof of the doctrine of *raj'a*.

<sup>2</sup> This expression occurs in the Sunnite and Shi'ite *ḥadīth*, and also in the Ismā'īlī history 'Uyūnu'l-Akhbār of Sayyid-nā 'Imādu'd-din Idrīs b. Hasan, died 872/1468. See *JRAS* for 1934, p. 21, note 1. *MB*, s.v.

فِي الْحَدِيثِ عَنِ النَّبِيِّ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ : يَكُونُ فِي هَذِهِ الْأَمَّةِ كُلُّ مَا كَانَ فِي إِسْرَائِيلَ حَدْوَ الْتَّعْلُلِ بِالْتَّعْلُلِ وَالْقَدْرَةِ بِالْقَدْرَةِ .

Our opponents (the Sunnites) have related that when the Mahdi, on whom be peace, will appear, Jesus, son of Mary, on whom be peace, will descend upon the earth and pray behind the Mahdi. Now the descent of Jesus to the earth is his return to the world after death, because Allah the Glorious and Mighty says: "Verily I will cause thee to die, and will take thee up to myself" [3, 48]. And Allah the Mighty and Glorious says: "And We gather them together so as to leave not one of them behind" [18, 45]. And He says: "And (remind them of) the Day when We shall gather out of every nation a host of those who denied Our signs" [27, 85]. Hence the day on which the multitude will be gathered together will be other than the day on which shall be gathered together the host.

And Allah the Glorious and Mighty says: "And they swear by Allah their most binding oaths (that) Allah will not raise up him who dieth. Nay, but it is a promise (binding) upon Him in truth, but most of mankind know it not" [16, 40]. The reference here [121] is to *raj'a*.<sup>1</sup> And that is because thereafter He says: "In order to make manifest to those that differ concerning it" [16, 41]. And this "making manifest" is to be found in this world, not in the next.<sup>2</sup> And I shall write, if Allah wills, a book exclusively on the topic of *raj'a*, in which I shall explain its real nature and the proofs regarding the authenticity of its occurrence.<sup>3</sup> And the profession (of belief in) transmigration of souls is false, and he who believes in it is an unbeliever, because transmigration involves the denial of the Garden and the Fire.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The Urdu translator says: It is related that a polytheist owed a debt to a Muslim, and in spite of repeated demands it remained unpaid. The Muslim said: I shall recover the debt after your death. The polytheist said: You are wrong. I swear by Allah that He will not revive any one after death. It was for falsifying him that this verse was revealed (*Majma'u'l-Bayān*).

<sup>2</sup> *والتبين يكون في الدنيا* اخ N omits the word.

<sup>3</sup> The Urdu translator says that belief in *raj'a* is an essential part of the creed of the Shi'ites, and he who denies it is not of the Shi'a.

<sup>4</sup> Transmigration is generally not accepted by Muslims, *MB*, 204; *BHA*, §89 (p. 31) speaks of *hulul*; *MC*, 92. It is however sometimes

## CHAPTER 19

ON THE BELIEF CONCERNING THE RETURN (*ba'th*) AFTER DEATH

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far, may the mercy of Allah be upon him: Our belief concerning the return to life after death is that it is true.

The Prophet said: O sons of 'Abdu'l-Muṭṭalib, verily the scout does not lie to his own people. I swear by Him Who sent me as a Prophet of truth, that you will surely die even as you sleep. And you will be resurrected even as you awaken, and after death there is no abode except Heaven or Hell. The creation of the whole of mankind and their resurrection is, for Allah the Mighty and Glorious, like the creation of but one soul. This is in accord with His Word, Exalted is He: "Your creation and your raising (from the dead) are only as (the creation and the raising of) a single soul" [31, 27].

## CHAPTER 20

THE BELIEF CONCERNING THE POND (*al-Hawd*)<sup>1</sup>

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far, the mercy of Allah be upon him: Our belief concerning the Pond (*al-Hawd*) is that it is true. Its width is the distance between Ayla<sup>2</sup> and Sanā'a, and it

---

asserted that a form of transmigration is accepted by Ismā'īlis, Affī, 90 (citing Shahristāni); *EL*, iv. 648. It is not easy to say how far this is correct; it may be that while authoritative works always rejected this doctrine, some popular beliefs lend colour to this common fallacy.

In *Kalāmi Pīr*, xlix, n. 2, W. Ivanow explains that *tanāsukh* is rejected by Ismā'īlis. So also *FC*, §93, which he considers as an answer to opponents. Probably the doctrine of Imāmat has been misunderstood as a doctrine of transmigration or reincarnation. It is also possible that popular beliefs, unwarranted by authority, may have tended towards this view. The Western Ismā'īlis entirely reject both *tanāsukh* and *hulūl*. Various passages from *Ikhwānu's-Ṣafā'*, *Tanbīhu'l-Hādī*, *Aqwālū'dh-Dhahabīya*, *Maṣābīh*, and *Risālatu'n-Nafs* of Sayyid-nā Dhu'ayb and of Sayyid-nā al-Khaṭṭāb could be cited in refutation of both these doctrines. For details of these works, see W. Ivanow, *Guide to Ismaili Literature*, London, 1933.

<sup>1</sup> *Hawd* is rendered as "basin" by Wensinck, *Handbook of Early Muh. Tradition*, 33-34. Cp. *MC*, 195 (art. 21), 231 sqq., 258, 268, 274.

<sup>2</sup> Among Sunnites, Ayla (S. Syria) and Aden, *MC*, 232.

belongs to the Prophet, on whom be peace. And verily in it there are as many pitchers as stars in the sky. And verily on the day of resurrection the giver of drink out of it will be the Prince of Believers, 'Ali b. Abi Tālib, on whom be peace. He will give his friends water to drink and drive away his enemies. He who drinks of it once will never thirst again. And the Prophet said: A group of persons among my followers will be dragged before me, when I shall be at the pond (of Kawthar), and be taken towards the left side (i.e. hell). Then shall I raise the cry: My companions, [122] my companions, O my Lord! And I shall be told: You do not know what they did after you.

## CHAPTER 21

### THE BELIEF CONCERNING INTERCESSION (*ash-shafā'a*)<sup>1</sup>

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far, the mercy of Allah on him: We believe that *shafā'a* (here, the state of being forgiven) belongs to him whose religion is approved (by Allah), whether he be of those who have committed great sins or small sins (*kabā'ir*, *saghā'ir*).<sup>2</sup> As for those persons who have repented of their evil deeds, they are not in need of intercession. Says the Prophet: May Allah not grant my intercession to him who does not believe in my (power of) intercession. And he

<sup>1</sup> ﴿الشافع﴾ is not merely “intercession” but also “passing over without punishment”, or forgiving sins, etc. (Lane). *MB* makes no distinction between ﴿الشافع﴾ and ﴿غفران﴾. Wensinck discusses intercession very fully, *MC*, 61. Rejected by the Mu'tazilites, it was generally accepted by the canonical tradition. Intercession appears to be against the doctrine of justice and retribution, and even the Qur'ān in some passages is not favourable to the idea, *ibid.*, 181, 183. Compare also *Fiqh Akbar* II, art. 20, *MC*, 194. The Wahhābis do not reject intercession altogether; they merely limit its operation, *MC*, 183. According to Ibnu'l-'Arabī there is no real *shafā'a*; the term implies merely a relation between two Divine Names, the Merciful and the Avenger, *Affifi*, 165. *BHA*, §§234, 235. *FC*, §29. Among Ismā'īlis intercession cannot be had except through the *walīya* of the Imām, *KP*, trans. 30. Fyzee, *Ismaili Law of Wills*, 70, 71, 72.

<sup>2</sup> On these two terms see *BHA*, §226 and note on p. 100.

(the Prophet) said: No mediator (*shafi'*) is more successful than repentance (*tawba*).<sup>1</sup>

(The right of) intercession belongs to prophets (*anbiyā'*) and *awsiyā'*.<sup>2</sup> And among believers (*mu'minīn*) also there are some who can intercede on behalf of people equal in number to the tribes of Rabi'a and Mudar.<sup>3</sup> Even the least of believers will be liable to intercede on behalf of 30,000.<sup>4</sup> There can be no forgiveness for sceptics (*ahlu'sh-shakk*) and polytheists (*ahlu'sh-shirk*); nor for unbelievers (*ahlu'l-kufr*) and those who are persistent in their denial (*ahlu'l-juhūd*). But the sinful amongst those who believe in the unity of Allah (*ahlu't-tawhīd*)<sup>5</sup> may be forgiven.

## CHAPTER 22

### THE BELIEF CONCERNING THE PROMISE (*al-wa'd*) AND THE THREAT (*al-wa'īd*)<sup>6</sup>

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far: Our belief concerning the Promise (*al-wa'd*) and the Threat (*al-wa'īd*) is that he whom Allah promises a reward for his good actions will certainly receive it. But he whom Allah has threatened with a punishment may have an alternative. If He punishes him, it is His justice; but if He forgives, it is His generosity.<sup>7</sup> "And thy Lord is not

<sup>1</sup> *MB*, 398; *MC*, 194 (art. 20), 169, and 180 sqq.; *BHA*, §§237-238.

<sup>2</sup> In Sunnite traditions the privilege of intercession belongs also to angels, martyrs and saints, *MC*, 182. Ithnā 'Asharites generally restrict it to prophets and Imāms, *BHA*, §§234, 235.

<sup>3</sup> These were big tribes and are selected to indicate the large number of persons on whose behalf effective intercession will take place by the instrumentality of a single individual.

<sup>4</sup> In the Sunnite tradition, 70,000, Wensinck, *Handbook*, 112.

<sup>5</sup> In the *Waṣīyat Abī Ḥanīfa*, art. 25, even mortal sins may be forgiven, *MC*, 130, 182, 268.

<sup>6</sup> In the *Tawhīd* there is a whole chapter on the subject, pp. 325, to 330<sub>8</sub>. Imām Ridā refutes the arguments of the Mu'tazilite that grave sins will not be forgiven by Allah, 326<sub>7-8</sub>. Even adulterers, thieves and wine-drinkers will be saved, provided they are not guilty of *shirk*, 329 (last three lines). Cp. also *FC*, §84.

<sup>7</sup> Compare *Fiqh Akbar* II, art. 14, *MC*, 193, fully discussed at p. 221. *MC*, 267, art. 25; *BHA*, §233.

unjust towards His slaves" [41, 46]. And He says, Mighty and Glorious is He: "Lo! Allah forgiveth not that a partner should be ascribed unto Him. And He forgiveth (all) save that to whom He will" [4, 51].

And Allah knows best.

### CHAPTER 23

#### THE BELIEF CONCERNING WHAT IS WRITTEN AGAINST THE SLAVE<sup>1</sup>

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far, the mercy of Allah be on him: Our belief concerning this is that there is not a single human being (lit. "slave") without having two angels specially deputed to record every one of his actions. Whoso intends a good act, a good act is written down to his credit; and if he acts according to his intention, ten meritorious acts are set down to his credit. But if [123] he intends a bad deed, nothing is written down against him, until he acts. When he does act, he is given seven hours. If (within that period) he repents, his repentance will be accepted and nothing will be written against him; and if he does not, one single bad deed will be written down against him.

These angels record every act of the individual, even the act of blowing upon ashes;<sup>2</sup> and Allah the Mighty and Glorious says "Lo! There are above you guardians, generous and recording, who know (all) that ye do" [82, 10-12].<sup>3</sup>

The Prince of Believers ('Alī b. Abī Tālib) once upon a time passed by a man, who was talking at random.<sup>4</sup> And he

<sup>1</sup> *MC*, 129, art. 17. Also Macdonald in *EI*, iii. 190 citing Qur. 82, 10-12.

<sup>2</sup> An idiomatic expression which generally means "striving uselessly".

<sup>3</sup> *MC*, 199. The Urdu translator adds a footnote that from this verse it is clear that men are responsible for their actions and have free will. It is not as if God is the creator of good and bad acts, for if that were so, human responsibility would be at an end, nor would the actions be attributed to human beings and they would not be punished for their evil deeds. Thus it is clear that actions proceed from human beings and not from God.

<sup>4</sup> N فضول الكلام ; D الكلام فضول.

(‘Ali) said: O man, you are dictating to your angel a letter to Allah, so speak what concerns you and omit that which does not concern you.

‘Ali, on whom be peace, said: A *muslim* so long as he remains silent is recorded as doing a good act; but when he speaks, he is written down either as righteous or as unrighteous.

And the two angels reside amongst the sons of Adam in their collar-bones. And verily the angel on the right side records the good acts, while he on the left records the bad ones. The two angels of the day write down the acts of men done during the day; while the two angels of the night record the acts of men done during the night.<sup>1</sup>

## CHAPTER 24

### THE BELIEF CONCERNING JUSTICE (*al-‘adl*)<sup>2</sup>

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja‘far: Verily Allah, Who is Blessed and Exalted above all others, has commanded us to be just, while He Himself treats us with something even better, namely, grace (*tafaddul*).<sup>3</sup> And that is because He the Glorious and Mighty says: “Whoso bringeth a good deed will receive tenfold the like thereof, while whoso bringeth an evil deed will be awarded the like thereof; and they shall not be wronged” [6, 61].

Justice (*al-‘adl*) means that He requites<sup>4</sup> a good act with a good act and an evil act with an evil act. The Prophet said: No man ever enters Paradise by virtue of his (good) actions

<sup>1</sup> The expressions ملائكة النهار and ملائكة الليل lead to the certainty that there are two sets of angels, one pair for day, the other for night.

<sup>2</sup> On God’s Justice see *MC*, 60–63 (*Fiqh Akbar* II, art. 22), 195, 234; *BHA*, has a very long and elaborate section on Allah’s Justice, arts. 111–151, but this contains good and evil, free will and predestination, *taklif*, etc. But see principally, §§149–151. The Shi‘ites lay great stress on ‘*adl*; not so the Sunnites. See *BHA*, 95, note to §111; Shahrastani, 29; Macdonald, *Development*, 136; the only reference in *Taw.* is on p. 61. *FC*, §84.

<sup>3</sup> Compare *BHA*, §151.

<sup>4</sup> Reading with D شبّه; N err. شبّه.

(alone), except by the mercy of Allah [124] the Glorious and Mighty.

### CHAPTER 25

#### THE BELIEF CONCERNING PURGATORY (*al-A'rāf*) <sup>1</sup>

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far: Our belief concerning *al-A'rāf* (Purgatory) is that it is a wall between Paradise and Hell, and upon it there will be "men who will recognize all (persons) by their peculiar marks" [7, 44]. These men will be the Prophet and his *awṣiyā*.<sup>2</sup> No one will be able to enter the Garden except he who recognizes them and him whom they recognize. And no one will enter the Fire except he who denies them (their rights), and him whom they (the Imāms) deny (as not belonging to their party).

And in the Purgatory there will be others who will await the command of Allah, whether He punish or forgive them.

### CHAPTER 26

#### THE BELIEF CONCERNING THE BRIDGE (*as-Sirāt*) <sup>3</sup>

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far: Our belief concerning the Bridge (*as-sirāt*) is that it is true, and that it is the bridge to Hell. It is the place from which the whole of mankind will pass. Allah the Mighty and Glorious says: "There is not one of you but shall go down unto it. That is a fixed ordinance of thy Lord" [19, 72].

<sup>1</sup> Apparently derived from the Ethiopic, Jeffery, 65. *MB*, 431; *MC*, 173. *A'rāf* is used in a metaphorical sense in the *Da'ā'im*; it refers to the Imāms under whose guidance the souls of men undergo purification after death, *FC*, p. 9.

<sup>2</sup> These *awṣiyā* are the 12 Imāms of the Ithnā 'Ashariya.

<sup>3</sup> Lit. "path", but here "bridge". Fully explained in *MC*, 232-233. It is a thin ridge over Hell; the wicked will fall, but the righteous will escape. Macdonald, 296 (Ash'ari). It is "sharper than a sword and finer than a hair", loc. cit., 306 (al-Ghazzāli), 311 (Nasafi), 349 (Fudāli); *BHA*, §224; *KP*, 107. According to Ibnu'l-'Arabī, "the *sirāt* is the straight path of the Divine Essence on which everything 'walks' because it is the source whence all things come and whither all things return," Affifi, 164-165.

According to another view, *as-sirāt* means the name of the Imāms (literally, *proofs*)<sup>1</sup> of Allah. And to him who knows them and obeys them in this world, Allah will grant permission (to traverse) the path, which is the bridge over Hell, on the Day of Resurrection—the Day of Regret and Contrition. And the Prophet said to 'Alī: O 'Alī, on the Day of Resurrection, I shall sit near the Bridge with you and Gabriel, and no one will cross the Bridge unless he can produce a writ (of absolution)<sup>2</sup> by reason of devotion (*walāya*) to you.

## CHAPTER 27

### THE BELIEF CONCERNING THE PASSES<sup>3</sup> WHICH ARE ON THE ROAD TO THE GATHERING-PLACE OF RESURRECTION (*mahshar*)

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far: Our belief concerning this is that verily these mountain-passes ('*aqabāt*) have each a specific

<sup>1</sup> For *hujja* in the sense of Imām, see *FC*, 8 and this is clearly explained in art. 38. The Imām is the Proof of Allah on earth, *KP*, 22 and at numerous other places. For a full discussion, *MB*, s.v. .

<sup>2</sup> *MC*, 168 mentions this note of credit.

<sup>3</sup> '*aqabatun*, pl. '*aqabāt*, is explained by Lane (p. 2102) as generally "a mountain-road, difficult of access". The word "pass" has been used as being simpler. It here means the difficulties or obstacles which men will have to encounter stage by stage before the actual entry into Paradise or Hell.

The Urdu translator explains on the authority of Sh. Mufid that by '*aqabātu mahshar*' are meant the obligatory acts regarding which questioning will take place on the day of Resurrection. In reality '*aqabāt*' do not mean hills, nor does it appear from any tradition that these are hills or mountains over which men will have to ascend, some with ease, others with difficulty. God has compared obligatory acts (*a'māl wājiba*) with '*aqabāt*', and the reason for this is that just as men find it difficult to ascend mountains, so is it difficult to perform the obligatory acts. The translator explains, on the authority of *MB*, that the correct belief is that on the day of Resurrection, every obligatory act will be accounted for; people will be stopped for the purpose of being questioned regarding obligatory acts at short distances. If any one is found without shortcoming in this respect, he will be freed from the difficulties of the Bridge (Urdu, *put sirāt*); but he who had abandoned the obligatory acts will be subjected to

name; some are called *fard* (compulsory duty) others, *amr* (command); yet others, *nahy* (prohibition).<sup>1</sup> So when a man will reach a mountain-pass called *fard*, and he had neglected it (in his life), he will be stopped there and the dues of Allah will be demanded of him. [125] Now if he goes out of it by means of some good act performed by him in the world, or by the mercy of Allah reaching him, then he escapes from it and goes on to another 'aqaba. He will not cease to be sent from one 'aqaba to another, and be stopped and questioned regarding his shortcomings in respect of each stage. If he escapes safely from all the stages, he arrives at the Abode of Permanence (*dāru'l-baqā'*). Here he comes upon life everlasting, and perpetual beatitude, without any affliction whatever. He will reside in the neighbourhood of Allah, with the Prophets, and His Proofs (Imāms), the veracious ones, the martyrs and the righteous ones from among His slaves.

And if he is stopped at a pass, and is questioned about a certain due in respect of which he is found wanting, and neither a good action on his own part, nor the mercy of Allah reaches him, his step will stumble and he will be hurled down in the fire of Hell, may Allah protect us from it.

All these passes are on the Bridge (*sīrāt*). The name of one of them is *al-walāya* (love of Imāms). All mankind will be stopped before it and questioned as regards their love for the Prince of Believers, 'Ali, and for the Imāms who followed him. He who will have a proper answer will be saved and will be permitted (to cross the Bridge safely). And he who is unable will tarry and be hurled down (in the fires of Hell). And (the proof) of this is the saying of Allah, the Mighty and Glorious: "And stop them for they must be questioned" [37, 24]. And the name of another pass is *Mirṣād* (watch) and that is on account of the saying of Allah, the Mighty and Glorious: "Lo! Thy Lord is ever watchful" [89, 13].<sup>2</sup>

difficulties. And then, unless God forgives him, or the intercession of a mediator avails him, he will be thrown headlong into Hell.

<sup>1</sup> Compare *BHA*, §113.

<sup>2</sup> In D the verses of the Qur'ān are transposed. The Urdu translator, apparently following *MB*, relates on the authority of Imām

Allah, the Mighty and Glorious, says:<sup>1</sup> I swear by My Honour and Glory, the wrong-doing of a wrong-doer is not permissible to me.<sup>2</sup>

One of the passes is called *ar-Rahm* (kindness); another, *al-Amāna* (trust); another, *as-Salāt* (prayer). There is a special 'aqaba named after each (act which is) *fard* (compulsory), or *amr* (command), or *nahy* (prohibition); and before each one of these the individual will be detained and questioned.<sup>3</sup> [126]

## CHAPTER 28

### THE BELIEF CONCERNING THE RECKONING (*al-hisāb*) AND THE SCALES (*al-mawāzīn*).<sup>4</sup>

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far: Our belief concerning the reckoning (*al-hisāb*) is that it is real. Some of it will be undertaken by Allah, the Mighty and Glorious, and some by His Proofs (the Imāms). The reckoning of Prophets and Imāms, on whom be peace, will be undertaken by Allah the Glorious and Mighty; while every Prophet will be entrusted with the reckoning of his *waṣī* (vicegerent, representative). And the vicegerents (*awṣīyā'*) will take the reckoning of the whole of their communities. Allah, who is Blessed and Exalted above all, will be witness for the prophets (*anbiyā'*) and apostles (*rusul*); and these (prophets and apostles) will be witnesses for the vicegerents (*awṣīyā'*).

---

Ja'far as-Ṣādiq that one of the mountain-paths of the Ḥirāt is named Mirṣād; which lit. means "a place where one lies in wait for, or watches, an enemy" (Lane).

<sup>1</sup> This is not a Qur'ānic verse, but apparently a tradition, as the Urdu translator explains.

<sup>2</sup> Reading with D حمزہ ل ; N حمزہ بی . The Urdu translator reading *lā yajūzu bī* renders this as follows: کسی ظالم کا ظلم بے بے سے نہ چھوٹیگا . "The wrong of no wrong-doer will escape Me, that is, escape My punishment." Both readings are possible. But the latter, read with *mirṣād*, is perhaps even more appropriate.

<sup>3</sup> Compare *MC*, 163-166 for a different account of the interrogation in the grave.

<sup>4</sup> The best general account will be found in *MC*, 167-179 (art. 21 of the *Waṣ. Abī Ḥan.*), also art. 21 of the *Fiqh Akbar* II, *ibid.*, 195 and 231 sqq.; Macdonald, 306 (*al-Ghazālī*) and other places; *BHA*, art. 224; *KP*, 110; *Affifi*, 163 sqq.

And the Imāms will be witnesses for the people, and this is borne out by His saying: “ But how (will it be with them) when We bring of every people a witness, and We bring thee (O Muḥammad) as a witness against these ? ” [4, 45]. And Allah says: “ Is he (to be counted equal with him) who relieth on a clear proof from his Lord, and a witness from Him reciteth <sup>1</sup> it ” . . . . [11, 20]. And the witness (here referred to) is the Prince of Believers, ‘Alī b. Abī Tālib. And He says, Exalted is He: “ Lo! Unto Us is their return, and Ours their reckoning ” [88, 25-26].

And Imām Ja‘far was asked concerning the saying of Allah, Exalted is He: “ And We shall set a just balance for the Day of Resurrection so that no soul shall be wronged in aught ” [21, 48].<sup>2</sup> He said the scales (or balance) are the Prophets and their vice-gerents (*awsiyā’*). Among men there will be some who will enter Paradise without a reckoning;<sup>3</sup> but every one will be questioned according to the saying of Allah: “ Then verily We shall question those unto whom (Our message) hath been sent, and verily We shall question the messengers ” [7, 5], that is, concerning religion.

And as for sins, no one will be questioned about them except he whose reckoning is being taken. Says Allah: “ On that day

<sup>1</sup> The translation of this verse presents some difficulty. Pickthall, Palmer, Rodwell, Bell and Muḥammad ‘Alī render بِلَوْهٍ as “ recites ”; while the Urdu translator takes it to mean “ follows ”, and this appears to deserve careful consideration. Dr. Daudpota has kindly sent me the following illuminating note, which I gratefully offer to the critical student:

Bayḍāwī takes • in بِلَوْهٍ to refer to بِيَنَةٍ, in the sense of بِرْهَانٍ; but this is evidently wrong, unless one takes “ the whole sense of the preceding words ” as denoted by •. Probably • refers to مَنْ i.e. the Prophet and شَاهِدٌ مِنْ اللهِ = شَاهِدٌ مِنْهُ, that is, the Qur’ān. The Shi‘itic interpretation, of course, should follow the trend of the Urdu translator’s thought, namely, • in مِنْ refers to the Prophet, مَنْ being the مَنْ of تَعْبُضٌ; and شَاهِدٌ مِنْ — a witness who is part of him, refers to ‘Alī.

<sup>2</sup> *MC*, 167.

<sup>3</sup> According to al-Ghazālī two classes are exempt from reckoning, the infidels and the sinless; Bayḍāwī mentions a third class, the sufferers, *MC*, 171.

neither man nor jinni will be questioned" [50, 39] that is, especially those who are the partisans (*shī'a*) of the Prophet and the Imāms, and not of the others<sup>1</sup>, as has been handed down in the commentaries of the Qur'ān. And every one whose reckoning is taken shall be punished, although [127] it be that the punishment amounts to no more than a slight detention.

And no one shall escape the Fire, and no one shall enter the Garden (merely) by virtue of his actions, except by the mercy of Allah, Exalted is He above all.<sup>2</sup> And verily Allah will address His slaves, whether they be the earlier or the later ones, in one speech containing the complete reckoning of the deeds of every person. And each person shall hear only that part of it which relates to himself, so that he shall imagine that he alone is being addressed and no one else. And Allah, Exalted is He, will not be diverted from addressing one person because He is addressing another. And He will be quit of His reckoning of the prior and later ones (i.e. all mankind) in the space of half an hour (*sā'a*), according to the computation of the hours of this world.

And Allah will confront each person with a book which will be found to be wide open, informing him of all his actions, omitting neither a minor nor a major sin.<sup>3</sup> In this fashion will Allah constitute each person his own reckoner and judge, for he will be told: "Read thy book. Thy soul sufficeth as a reckoner against thee this day" [17, 15].

Allah will put a seal upon the mouths of certain people, and their hands and feet and all their limbs will testify to things which they are hiding. "And they say unto their skins: why

<sup>1</sup> The Urdu translator, citing the *Majma'u'l-Bayān*, relates on the authority of Imām 'Ali ar-Ridā, that he once told his companions that on the Day of Resurrection, the true believers (Shī'a) will not be questioned, because the sinful ones among them will be sufficiently punished during *barzakh* (the period between death and resurrection), so that when they rise, they will not be answerable for any sin.

<sup>2</sup> Salvation therefore depends entirely upon grace.

<sup>3</sup> *MC*, 172 sqq. Those who receive the book in the right hand will be treated with lenity; those who receive it in the left, with severity; and those who receive it behind their backs are the infidels and they will go to Hell, *ibid.*, 173 (citing the *Aḥwāl'u'l-Qiyāma*).

testify ye against us? They say: Allah, Who giveth speech to all things, hath given speech to us, and it is He Who created you at the first and it is He unto Whom ye shall return. Ye did not hide yourselves lest your ears and your eyes and your skins should testify against you, but ye deemed that Allah knew not much of what ye did" [41, 21-22].

And I shall discuss separately the (manner in which) the reckoning takes place in my book on the Reality of the Return (*haqīqatu'l-ma'ād*), if Allah wills.

### CHAPTER 29

#### THE BELIEF CONCERNING THE GARDEN (*al-janna*)<sup>1</sup> AND THE FIRE (*an-nār*)<sup>2</sup>

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far: Our belief concerning Paradise

<sup>1</sup> For the word *janna*, see Jeffery, 103. Paradise, according to *Waṣ-Abī Han.*, art. 20 (*MC*, 129), is a reality; it is created and everlasting; its inhabitants will not vanish (art. 27). See also *MC*, 166. Orthodox Muslim theology knows only of a heavenly Paradise, while some like the Hishāmites, Dirārites, Jahmites and a section of Qadarites believed in a worldly Paradise, *ibid.*, 166. Some persons will enter Paradise even without interrogation, *ibid.*, 177. The delights of Paradise are graphically described in the Qur'ān as well as in the creeds; e.g. the black-eyed ones (*hūr*), free from impurity, untouched by man or *jinn*, etc., *ibid.*, 234. Later creeds like *Fiqh Akbar* II, art. 25, assert that after a period of punishment every believer, provided he has not committed a grave sin, will be admitted to Paradise, *ibid.*, 268. Cf. also Wensinck, *Handbook*, 180, s.v. Paradise; and *Djanna*, *EI*, I. 1014. It is not correct, according to the late Prof. A. A. Bevan, to think that Paradise was a purely sensual concept, Nicholson, *Lit. History of the Arabs*, 168 citing "The Beliefs of early Mohammedans respecting a Future Existence" (*Journal of Theological Studies*, Oct. 1904, p. 20 sqq.). *BHA*, §§226-236; *FC*, 7, 15, and arts. 81-85; *KP*, 71, 96, graphically described 105 sqq. It is a common belief that Hasan b. Sabbāh made an earthly Paradise for Assassins; W. Ivanow however explains this as a misunderstanding of the declaration of *qiyāmatu'l-qiyāmat* by al-Qāhir bi-ahkāmi'l-lāh Hasan in Alamut on 17 Ram. 559/8 Aug. 1164 (*EI*, *Sup.*, s.v. *Ismā'iliya*, p. 99 sqq.). Ibnu'l-'Arabi's notions are derived entirely from subjective states, Affifi, 166; and his Heaven is gnosis coupled with belief, *ibid.*, 168.

<sup>2</sup> The word *jahannam* is explained by Jeffery, 105-106. The Mu'tazilites taught that those who entered Hell never came out of it, *MC*, 62; but generally speaking intercession will take place, 184. According

is that it is a permanent abode (*dāru'l-baqā'*)<sup>1</sup> [128] and an abode of safety. There is in it neither death, nor old age, nor disease, nor calamity, nor decline, nor palsy, nor care, nor sorrow, nor need, nor poverty. It is an abode of plenty, of happiness, of quiet and of nobility. Affliction shall not touch its inmates, nor weariness. In it there will be things for which the souls of men yearn and which give delight to their eyes, and they shall reside therein forever. It is an abode the inmates whereof are the neighbours of Allah, and His friends (*awliyā'*) and loved ones and the recipients of His generosity. And they are of different kinds and ranks. Among them will be some who like angels<sup>2</sup> will receive their favours by sanctifying and glorify-

to Jahm, like Paradise, it will disappear, 121, but this is specifically denied. Hell is created but everlasting, 129, 165, 185, 195, 212, 273. This again is opposed to the view of at-Tahāwi that both Heaven and Hell are everlasting, 165 (n. 5). Infidels will remain there everlasting, 129, 131 (arts. 20 and 27), but believers will be saved by intercession, 130 (art. 25), 184, especially 274. On general aspects, see *Djahannam*, *EL*, i. 998. Macdonald, 306; *BHA*, §§230-236. Among the Eastern Ismā'īlis, not knowing the Imām leads to Hell, *KP*, 48, 61, and Hell is the state of a man who drives men away from God, *ibid.*, 92 (see also *dūzakh* in the index); described 108. For Ibnu'l-'Arabi's ideas, Affifi, 164 sqq. Hell is ignorance, 168; this is derived from *Ikhwānus'-Safā'*, where it is laid down that Heaven and Hell are happiness and unhappiness of the soul respectively, 187.

<sup>1</sup> *MC*, 129, 130 (art. 27), 165, 185, 195, 211, 268. This is the usual view, as opposed to that of Jahm that Paradise and Hell will vanish, *ibid.*, 121.

<sup>2</sup> This belief is severely criticized by the Urdu translator. Instead of following the Shaykh in his somewhat idealistic creed, the translator on the authority of Shaykh Mufid says as follows: Shaykh Mufid states that it is incorrect to hold the belief that some, like angels, will find bliss in the worship and glorification of Allah. First, it is contrary to the Qur'ān. Allah says: "Its food is everlasting" [13, 35]. And He says: "And We shall wed them unto fair ones, with lovely, wide eyes" [44, 54; 52, 20]. And He says: "Lo! those who merit Paradise this day are happily employed,—they and their wives,—in pleasant shade, on thrones reclining" [36, 55-56]. And He says: "... There for them are pure spouses" [2, 23]. In spite of these weighty proofs, how could the Shaykh as-Ṣadūq formulate such an article of faith?

Secondly, this article is contrary to that which is held by consensus among the Shi'a. In reality this is the belief of the Christians, and such

ing Allah and declaring His greatness. And there will be others who will find pleasure in different kinds of food and drink and fruit and comfortable couches,<sup>1</sup> and fair women with beautiful, big, black eyes,<sup>2</sup> and in being served by young pages endowed with perpetual youth, and in sitting on cushions and rich carpets and in dresses of silk brocade. All of them will be able to enjoy what they like and desire, in accordance with their own aspirations, which shall be granted to them by Allah.

Imām Ja'far as-Ṣādiq has said: Verily mankind worship Allah in three different ways. One group among them worships Him out of desire for His Paradise and in the hope of His reward—and this is the worship of servants. Another group worships Him for fear of His Fire—and this is the worship of slaves. Yet another group worships Him out of love for Him—and this is the worship of the noble ones; these, indeed, are the trusted ones (*amīn*, pl. *umanā'ī*).<sup>3</sup> And this (follows from) the saying of Allah the Glorious and Mighty: “And such are safe from that day” [27, 91].

And our belief concerning Hell is that it is a place of degradation [129] or that of revenge on unbelievers and sinners. None but the polytheists will reside therein permanently. As for those monotheists (*ahlu't-tawhīd*) who are sinners, they will

---

a belief is contrary to certain Qur'ānic verses. The real reason for the fury of the learned translator, following Sh. Mufid, appears from the last sentence.

Wensinck has fully discussed the position of angels, *MC*, 198 sqq., and he points out that 'Ali al-Qāri, on the authority of *Jawāhiru'l-Uṣūl*, asserts that angels have no share in the delights of Paradise or in the *virtus beatifica*, *ibid.*, 200. In Ismā'īli thought the angels are Platonic ideas, or abstractions of natural phenomena, *FC*, 68n., citing arts. 23 and 85 of the *Tāju'l-'Aqā'id*. Hence no question would arise whether they can share the delights of Paradise. In fact a perusal of *Tāju'l-'Aqā'id*, arts. 81-85, shows the entirely spiritual quality of reward and retribution in Ismā'īlism; although belief in Paradise and Hell is a necessary article of faith, Fyze, *Ismaili Law of Wills*, 71-74.

<sup>1</sup> For *arīka*, pl. *arū'ik*, see Jeffery, 52.

<sup>2</sup> *MC*, 234.

<sup>3</sup> This may be compared with the famous answer of Rābi'a al-Basrī to Sufyān ath-Thawrī, M. Smith, *Rābi'a the Mystic* (Cambridge, 1928), 102.

be taken out of it by the mercy of Allah and the intercession which they obtain.<sup>1</sup> It is related that no pain shall afflict a single one among the monotheists in Hell when they enter it: but they will only be afflicted with pain at the time of their exit from it; and these ills will be the requital of their own actions, and Allah is not "unjust towards the slaves" [41, 46].

And the residents of Hell will be miserable indeed: it is not decreed for them that they shall die, nor shall the torment of Hell abate for them. "Therein taste they neither coolness nor (any) drink, save boiling water and pus (*ghassāq*): reward proportioned (to their evil deeds)" [78, 24-26].<sup>2</sup> If they ask for food, they will be fed on *zaggūm*.<sup>3</sup> "And if they ask for showers, they will be showered with water like unto molten lead which burneth the faces. Calamitous the drink and ill the resting-place!" [18, 28]. And from a distant place shall they cry out and say: "O our Lord, remove us from here. If we return (to evil) then indeed we shall be wrong-doers" [23, 109]. For a time no reply shall be given to them; then they will be told: "Go ye away unto it, and speak not (unto Me)" [23, 110]. "And they cry: O Master,<sup>4</sup> let thy Lord make an end of us. He saith: Here must ye remain" [43, 77].

It is related according to authentic sources that Allah will command certain persons to be put into Hell, and then he will

<sup>1</sup> This is the usual view, but compare p. 82, note 1. *MC*, 184. *BHA*, §231 declares how after the sinners have washed their faces with the Spring of Life, their faces will appear like full moons. Regarding intercession, see *ibid.*, §234.

<sup>2</sup> غَسَاقَ or غَسَاقَ has been variously rendered as "running sores" (Rodwell), "pus" (Palmer) and "a paralysing cold" (Pickthall). Lane gives the following meanings: (1) the ichor, or watery matter, that will flow and drip from the skins of the inmates of Hell, (2) or their washings, (3) or tears. Also (4) intense cold, that by reason of its intensity, burns like a hot wind, and (5) stinking. Lane, s.v. غَسَقَ, Pt. vi, 2258. Jeffery shows that it is an Arabic and not a Turkish word, p. 29.

<sup>3</sup> This fruit is referred to in the Qur'an three times, 37, 60; 44, 43; 56, 52. *MB* explains that *zaggūm* is a fruit of bad taste and foul smell. The Qur'an describes it graphically in 37, 62-63. Its tree is in the lowest stage of Hell, *EI*, s.v. *Djahannam*.

<sup>4</sup> This refers to the custodian of Hell.

tell the Master (*mālik*): Order the Fire not to burn their feet, for they used to walk towards mosques; nor their hands, for they used to raise them towards Me in prayer; nor their tongues, for they used frequently to recite the Qur'ān; nor [130] their faces, for they used to perform the ablutions completely, without deficiency. And the Master (of Hell) will say: O you miserable ones, what used to be your plight? And they will reply: We used to act (according to the commands) of beings other than Allah. Then they will be told: Take your reward from him for whom you acted.

And our belief concerning Heaven and Hell is that they are both created things.<sup>1</sup> Verily the Prophet entered Paradise, and saw the Fire, at the time of his ascension. We believe that no one goes forth from this world, until he sees his own place, either in Heaven or in Hell.<sup>2</sup> And verily no true believer (*mu'min*) goes forth from this world without being shown the best place that he has seen in this world, and he sees also his place in the next world. Then he is asked to choose between the two, and he chooses the next world (*al-ākhira* as dis. from *ad-dunyā*), and at this moment he dies.

In common parlance (when someone dies) people say: So and so has made a gift of his spirit. Now no one gives away anything, save by his own free will,<sup>3</sup> unless he is compelled or constrained.

As regards the Garden (*janna*) of Adam, it was one of the gardens of this world, in which the sun rose and set; it was by no means the Garden of Eternity (*jannatu'l-khuld*). If it were the Eternal Paradise he would never have gone forth from it.<sup>4</sup> We believe that the people of Paradise reside therein eternally as a reward (for their good actions); and the inhabitants of Hell remain there forever as a punishment

<sup>1</sup> *MC*, 129 (art. 20) and other places. Contra *at-Tahāwi*, *ibid.*, 166, n. 5.

<sup>2</sup> This probably is an echo of the view of tradition that the faithful also shall have to enter Hell, *MC*, 233.

<sup>3</sup> طيبة نفس here means "freely, of his own accord".

<sup>4</sup> This is a very important belief, cp. *MC*, 166 (lines 4-5).

(for their sins).<sup>1</sup> Not a single person enters Paradise except that he is shown his place in Hell and told: This was your place. Had you disobeyed Allah, you would surely have been in it. And no one enters Hell-fire, but is previously shown his place in Paradise and told: This was your place, if only you had obeyed Allah, you would surely have been in it. And these (the righteous ones) inherit (the houses in Paradise) in the place of [131] those (i.e. the unrighteous ones and the unbelievers). And this is in accordance with the saying of Allah: "These are the heirs who will inherit Paradise. There they will abide" [23, 10-11]. And the least of believers in point of rank in Paradise shall have ten times of what he had in this world.

### CHAPTER 30

#### THE BELIEF CONCERNING THE MANNER OF THE DESCENT OF REVELATION (*nuzūlu'l-wahy*)<sup>2</sup> FROM ALLAH IN THE SHAPE OF BOOKS, COMMANDS (*al-amr*) AND PROHIBITIONS (*an-nahy*)

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far: Our belief concerning this is that there is a tablet between the two eyes of Isrāfil. Whenever Allah wishes to speak by way of revelation, the Tablet comes in contact with the forehead of Isrāfil, then he looks into it and

<sup>1</sup> The translator here adds a footnote, on the authority of Sh. Mufid, that although some will remain permanently in Hell, still there will be others, who will, after a time, be saved by the intercession of the Sinless Ones (Imāms), and enter and thereafter reside eternally in Heaven. But the unbelievers, as is to be expected, will forever remain in Hell. Cp. p. 80, n. 1. Reminiscent of the Mu'tazilite doctrine, *MC*, 62, *BHA*, §232.

<sup>2</sup> The best general account is by Wensinck, *EL*, iv. 1091-1093; see also Macdonald, 335. For details, Wensinck, *Handbook*, s.v. Qur'ān, 129. *BHA*, §§152, 153, 168. In the *Tawhīd*, Ibn Bābawayhi relates a tradition that the Qur'ān is uncreated, p. 177, 1. 6. *KP*, 35, and esp. 69 (where *wahy* and *ihām* are distinguished), and 85. al-Fudali gives an account of the revelation, but does not mention Isrāfil, Macdonald, 335. Ibnu'l-'Arabī holds that Gabriel was the creation of the Prophet's imagination: it was really his own self, Affifi, 118-119. The Western Ismā'īlis hold that *wahy* is what the soul (*nafs*) of the Prophet receives through his intellect ('*aql*) by the will (*amr*) of the Creator, *FC*, §25, also §§26-29.

reads what is in it.<sup>1</sup> Isrāfil would then convey it to Mīkā'il; and he in turn would convey it to Gabriel; and the angel Gabriel would convey it to the prophets, on whom be peace.

And as for the fainting fit which would come upon the Prophet, it used to take place at the time of Allah's addressing him by reason whereof he would also feel a heaviness and perspire. But Gabriel, on account of respect for the Prophet, would never enter his presence until he sought permission, and he used to sit before him (the Prophet) in the manner of a slave.

### CHAPTER 31

#### THE BELIEF CONCERNING THE REVELATION OF THE QUR'ĀN IN THE NIGHT OF POWER<sup>2</sup>

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far: Our belief concerning this is that the Qur'ān was sent down in one lot, in the month of Ramadān, on the Night of Power (*laylatu'l-qadr*) (first) to al-Baytu'l-Ma'mūr.<sup>3</sup> And then it was revealed in the space of twenty<sup>4</sup> years from the Baytu'l-Ma'mūr (to the Prophet).<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Here the Urdu translator adds a footnote that according to Sh. Mu'fid this is not a correct article of faith. The account of Revelation given by al-Qummī is based on rare traditions and the learned among the Shī'a are not agreed upon it; therefore no reliance can be placed upon it. The belief which is sufficient is that Revelation came to the Prophet in two distinct ways. Sometimes Allah would Himself teach the Revelation to the Prophet, in which case the Prophet used to faint. And sometimes Revelation would be brought to him by Gabriel.

<sup>2</sup> Macdonald, 335 (al-Fuḍālī); Wensinck, *Handbook*, s.v. Night of the Decree, 176. Fully discussed, *MB*, 309 and reasons given why so called.

<sup>3</sup> This is the edifice in Heaven (in the third, or the fourth, or the fifth, or the seventh Heaven) which 70,000 angels visit every day. It is exactly above the Ka'ba (Lane). It is related from 'Alī b. Ibrāhīm that this edifice was erected by Allah for the purpose of repentance for the inhabitants of the heavens, just as the Ka'ba is for the inhabitants of this world, *MB*, 309. Cp. *Baytu'l-'Izza*, Macdonald, 335.

<sup>4</sup> *MB*, 23 years.

<sup>5</sup> The Urdu translator says that Sh. Mu'fid does not accept this belief as correct. It is based on a single tradition, of an uncertain character. And as certain verses of the Qur'ān refer to events which were recent at the time, it is clear that the whole of the Qur'ān could not have been

And verily Allah the Glorious and Mighty bestowed knowledge in its totality on His Prophet, on whom be the blessings of Allah and His peace, and then said to him: "... And hasten not (O Muhammad) with the Qur'ān ere its revelation hath been perfected unto thee, and say: My Lord! Increase me in knowledge" [20, 113], and He said: "Stir not thy tongue here-with to hasten it. Lo! upon Us (resteth) the putting together thereof [132] and the reading thereof. So when We read it, follow thou its reading. Then lo! upon Us (resteth) the explanation thereof" [75, 16-20].

## CHAPTER 32

### THE BELIEF CONCERNING THE QUR'ĀN<sup>1</sup>

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far: Our belief concerning the Qur'ān is that it is the Word (*kalām*)<sup>2</sup> of Allah, and His revelation, sent down by Him, His speech and His Book. And "Falsehood cannot come to it from before it or behind it. A revelation from the Wise, the Praiseworthy" [41, 42]. And "Lo! This verily is the true narrative" [3, 55]. "And Verily this (Qur'ān) is a conclusive word; it is no pleasantry" [86, 13-14].

---

revealed at one time at the Baytu'l-Ma'mūr. In reality, it was revealed piecemeal as necessity arose.

The Urdu translator, sitting in judgement between the two views, says: Everything contained in the Qur'ān was known to God from the beginning (that is, He possessed detailed knowledge of coming events). And then on the happening of particular events, the appropriate verses of the Qur'ān, already in existence, were revealed from time to time.

<sup>1</sup> General discussion on Qur'ān, Allah's speech and Allah's speaking to Moses, *MC*, 149-151. The Ash'arites generally believed in the Qur'ān being uncreated; whilst the Mu'tazilites asserted that the Qur'ān was created, Macdonald, 146 et seq., 295. *BHA*, §§72-80. These paragraphs show the identity of the Shi'ite and Mu'tazilite views. See also Miller's note to arts. 76 and 79 (pp. 93-94). How the Qur'ān is created and has nothing to do with Allah's attribute of *speech* is also clearly explained in the last portion of the article on *kalām* in *MB*.

<sup>2</sup> *Kalām* (speech) of Allah must be distinguished from *kalām* or *'ilmu'l-kalām*, the scholastic philosophy of Islam, Macdonald in *EI*, ii. 270-275. *MC*, 78, 79; 127 (*Was. Abī Han.*, art. 9); 266 (*Fīqh Akbar III*, art. 16).

Verily, Allah, Blessed and Exalted is He above all, is its Creator<sup>1</sup> and Revealer and Master and Protector and Utterer.

### CHAPTER 33

#### THE BELIEF CONCERNING THE EXTENT (*mablagh*) OF THE QUR'ĀN

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far: Our belief is that the Qur'ān, which Allah revealed to His Prophet Muhammad, is (the same as) the one between the two boards (*daffatayn*).<sup>2</sup> And it is that which is in the hands of the people, and is not greater in extent than that. The number of *sūras* as generally accepted is one hundred and fourteen. And according to us *ad-Duhā* (The Morning, *Sūra* 93) and *a lam nashrah* (The Solace or Have We not expanded, *Sūra* 94) together form one *sūra*; and *a lam tara kayfa* (The Elephant, *Sūra* 105) and *li-īlāfi Quraysh* (Quraysh or Winter, *Sūra* 106) together form one *sūra*.

And he who asserts that we say that it is greater in extent than this (the present text) is a liar.

And that which is related (in tradition) concerning the reward for reciting every *sūra* of the Qur'ān, and the reward of him who completes the whole of the Qur'ān, and the permissibility of reciting two *sūras* in a *rak'a* (unit of prayer),<sup>3</sup> and the prohibition of reciting the Qur'ān between the two *sūras* in a

<sup>1</sup> Therefore the Qur'ān is clearly created and not uncreated.

<sup>2</sup> This expression implies that the text of the Qur'ān, as is to be found in the *textus receptus* and which is in the hands of every one in the shape of a book, is the one accepted wholly by al-Qummi. Some of the Shi'a assert that a portion of the Qur'ān is not included in the *textus receptus* and is with the Hidden Imām, cf. Browne's *Literary History of Persia*, iv. 388-389, citing 'Aqā'idu'sh-Shī'a of 'Ali Asghar b. 'Ali Akbar; Sell, *Studies in Islam* (Madras, 1928), 246, citing Dr. Mirza Kazembeg in *Journal Asiatique*, December 1843, pp. 373-430, and suggesting that the *Sūra* of *an-Nūrāyīn* (The Two Lights, i.e. Muhammad and 'Ali) is omitted. This view is however erroneous, as is shown here and fully discussed by Muhammad Ali, *The Holy Qur'ān*, text and translation (Woking, England, 1917), Preface pp. xc-xcii, citing Mullā Muhsini Fayd in his famous *tafsīr, aṣ-ṣāfi*. See the Tehran ed., A.H. 1274, pp. 10-15 (6th *mugaddima*), and also F. Buhl, *EI*, ii. 1063-1076, esp. 1071.

<sup>3</sup> The translator adds that this is the case in the *sunna* prayer.

*rak'a* of the *fard* prayer<sup>1</sup> is the verification of what we said concerning the Qur'ān and that the extent of the Qur'ān is (no more than) what is in the hands of the people. And similarly what is related concerning the prohibition of reading the whole of the Qur'ān in a single night, and that it is not permissible to complete the recitation of the Qur'ān in less than three days [133] is (also) a verification of what we have said.

On the contrary we say that so much of revelation has come down, which is not embodied in the present Qur'ān, that if it were to be collected, its extent would undoubtedly be 17,000 verses. And this, for example, is like the saying of Gabriel to the Prophet: Allah says to thee, O Muḥammad, act gently with My creatures, in the same manner as I do. Or his (Gabriel's) saying: Be careful of the bitter hatred of the people and their enmity. Or his (Gabriel's) saying: Live as you desire, for verily you shall die. Love what you will, for verily you shall be separated. Act how you will, for verily you shall be faced with it. The nobility of man is his prayer by night; his honour is refraining from injury to human beings. Or like the saying of the Prophet: Gabriel never ceased enjoining me (to use) the tooth-brush (*siwāk*) until I feared it would chafe (my gums) or make me toothless.<sup>2</sup> And he (Gabriel) never ceased enjoining me (to be good) to the neighbour until I thought he would make him my heir; and he never ceased enjoining me about the wife, to the extent that I thought it would be improper to divorce her; and he never ceased enjoining me about the slave, until I thought that he would fix a period within which he should be freed. Or like the saying of Gabriel, when the battle of the Ditch (Khandaq) was over: O Muḥammad, verily Allah, Exalted and Blessed is He above all, commands you not to say the 'aṣr (afternoon) prayer, except with the Banū Qurayṣa.<sup>3</sup> Or like

<sup>1</sup> This refers to the prohibition of reciting two *sūras* of the Qur'ān after al-Ḥamد in the *fard* prayer.

<sup>2</sup> نَهَى جَبْرِيلَ يَوْمَ صِفَنَى بِالسُّؤَالِ حَتَّى خَفَتْ أَنْ أَخْفَى أَوْ أَدْرَدْ N. err. <sup>2</sup> D correctly ... أَخْفَى أَوْ أَدْرَدْ and بالسُّؤَالِ.

<sup>3</sup> نَهَى فَرِيَظَةَ بْنَيْ فَرِيَظَةَ N. err. <sup>3</sup> D; إِلَّا بَنِي فَرِيَظَةَ.

his saying (the Prophet's): My Lord commanded me to deal gently with the people, in the same manner as he asked me to perform the obligatory acts. Or like his saying: Verily we prophets were ordered not to speak to people except in accordance with their intelligence. Or like his saying: Verily Gabriel brought a command to me from my Lord, which cooled my eyes and brought joy to my breast. He (Gabriel) said: Verily [134] Allah the Mighty and Glorious says that 'Ali is the Prince of Believers, and the leader of those having a whiteness on the forehead, wrists and ankles (from the effects of ablution and prayer).<sup>1</sup> Or like his saying: Gabriel came to me and said: O Muhammad, verily Allah the Blessed and Exalted, has given Fātima in marriage to 'Ali in front of His Throne ('arsh), and made select angels bear witness to the marriage. So marry her to him in this world and make the select amongst your people bear witness to it.

There are many such (traditions), all of which are revelations, but do not form part of the Qur'ān; if they did, they would surely have been included and not excluded from it. The Prince of Believers ('Ali), when he collected the Qur'ān and brought it, said to them: This is the book of Allah, your Lord, as it was revealed to your Prophet; not a single word has been added to it or omitted from it. They said: we have no need of it; we have with us what you possess. So he ('Ali) returned saying: "But they flung it behind their backs and bought there-with a little gain. Verily evil is that which they have gained thereby" [3, 184].

Imām Ja'far as-Ṣādiq has said: The Qur'ān is one; it was revealed by One to one single Prophet. And the difference (in readings) is due only on account of different transmitters (*rāwī*, pl. *ruwāt*). For wherever there occurs in the Qur'ān the like of the saying of Him Who is Exalted above all: "If thou ascribe a partner to Allah thy work will fail and thou indeed will be among

<sup>1</sup> So Lane, s.v. حِجَل. The expression *الْفَرَّ السَّاجِلُونَ* is taken from the description of noble horses, and later applied to the most pious among human beings. The Urdu translator renders it loosely: سردار ہیں افسروں کے that is "... the leader of (all) commanders".

the losers!" [39, 65], or the like of His saying: "That Allah may forgive thee (O Muhammad) of thy sin that which is past and that which is to come" [48, 2],<sup>1</sup> or like His saying: "And if We had not made thee wholly firm thou mightest almost have inclined unto them a little. Then had We made thee taste a double (punishment) of living and a double (punishment) of dying . . ." [17, 76-77] and verses resembling these,—our belief concerning them is that they were revealed within the meaning of (the well-known proverb)—"Thee do I mean (O beloved), but hear, O (thou) neighbouring lady".<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The Urdu translator says: Mufaddal b. 'Umar said that some one asked the meaning of this verse of Imām Ja'far as-Ṣādiq. The Imām said: I swear by God, the Prophet never committed any sin. The real meaning is that on account of his intercession, the sins both past and future, of the partisans of 'Ali will be forgiven (*Majma'u'l-Bayān*).

The translator gives a graphic illustration of the "vicarious liability" for the sins of others, and how it can be got over. A king appoints a friend of his as the governor of a province, and tells him "You are responsible for the good behaviour of these people". Some of these subjects break the law, and are brought forward for punishment. The governor intercedes and the king says: "Their wrongdoing would not have been forgiven but for your intercession. And this can only be done on the assumption that these wrongs were committed by you personally". Similarly there are many verses of the Qur'ān addressed to the Prophet, but intended in reality for the community. The translator further states that according to one authority (probably *MB*), *di f* in this context means punishment, torment ('adhb). All these fanciful explanations are of great interest from the dogmatic point of view.

<sup>2</sup> Freytag, *Arab. Prov.* i. 72-75 (No. 187); *MB*, s.v. جار. The proverb يَا أُخْتَ خَيْرِ الْبَدْوِ وَالْحَنَارَةِ [يَا أُخْتَ أَعْنَى وَأَسْمَى يَا جَارَةَ] is explained by the translator as follows: This is a proverb among the Arabs. Sahl b. Mālik al-Fazārī is the originator. He fell in love with a beautiful young girl and, desiring to marry her, wrote some verses addressed to another lady, two of which were:

يَا أُخْتَ خَيْرِ الْبَدْوِ وَالْحَنَارَةِ كَيْفَ تَرَيْنَ فِي فَتَّيَ فَزَارَةَ  
أَصْبَحَ يَهُوِي حُرَّةً مُنْطَارَةً [يَا أَخْتَ أَعْنَى وَأَسْمَى يَا جَارَةَ]

(1) "O sister of one who is best among the dwellers of the desert and the town, What do you think (about marrying) a young man of the tribe of Fazāra,

And wherever there occurs in the Qur'ān the particle *aw*, that is, "or", the person to whom the ordinance refers has [135] an option. And wherever there occurs in the Qur'ān the expression *yā ayyuha'l-ladhīna āmanū* "O you who believe", this is in lieu of the expression in the Torah, *yā ayyuha'l-masākīn*, "O you miserable ones". Every verse of the Qur'ān, which begins with the expression *yā ayyuha'l-ladhīna āmanū* ("O you who believe"), refers necessarily to 'Alī b. Abī Tālib as their leader (*qā'id*) and prince (*amīr*) and the most noble and the first among them. And every verse which directs the way to Paradise applies to the Prophet or the Imāms, the blessings of Allah upon them all and their partisans and followers. And every verse which points the way to Hell refers to their enemies and opponents. If the verses deal with the account of those mentioned earlier (i.e. prophets and Imāms) then whatever of good there is in them will be applicable to the righteous; and whatever of evil, to the evil-doers. Among the prophets none is better than the Prophet Muḥammad, the blessings of Allah upon him, and among the *awṣiyā'* (plenipotentiaries) none is better than his (the Prophet's) plenipotentiaries,<sup>1</sup> and among the communities none in reality is more excellent than this community—the partisans (*shī'a*) of the People of his (Prophet's) House, and none else. And among the wicked, none is more wicked than those who are their enemies and opponents.<sup>2</sup>

#### CHAPTER 34

##### THE BELIEF CONCERNING PROPHETS (*anbiyā'*) AND APOSTLES (*rusul*) AND IMĀMS (*hujaj*) AND ANGELS (*malā'ika*)<sup>3</sup>

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far: Our belief concerning the prophets (*anbiyā'*) and apostles (*rusul*) and Imāms (*hujaj*) is

(2) He is greatly desirous of a free woman, well-perfumed; Thee (O beloved) do I mean, but hear, O thou neighbouring lady!"

This proverb is employed when a certain person is addressed and another is intended.

<sup>1</sup> The twelve Imāms of the Shi'a.

<sup>2</sup> Although it begins with the Qur'ān, this section contains a number of well-known Shi'itic beliefs.

<sup>3</sup> The best general account is in *MC*, 197 sqq. Cf. also s.v. *Malā'ika*, Macdonald in *EI*, iii. 189.

that they are more excellent than angels.<sup>1</sup> And what the angels said to Allah<sup>2</sup> the Mighty and Glorious when He said to them: "... Lo! I am about to place a viceroy in the earth; they said: Wilt thou place therein one who will do mischief therein and will shed blood, while we, we hymn Thy praise and sanctify Thee? He said: Surely I know what ye know not" [2, 28]—was due to their envy<sup>3</sup> of Adam. And they did not desire aught except a position [136] higher than their own, for superiority is due to knowledge. Allah, Exalted is He, says: "And He taught Adam all the names, then showed them to the angels, saying: Inform Me of the names of these, if ye are truthful [2, 29]. They said: Glory be to Thee! We have no knowledge save that which Thou hast taught us. Lo! Thou, only Thou, art the Knower, the Wise [ibid., 30]. He said: O Adam! Inform them of their names, and when he had informed them of their names, He said: Did I not tell you that I know the secret of the heavens and the earth? And I know that which ye disclose and that which ye hide" [ibid., 31]. Now the superiority of Adam over the angels, on account of his position as *nabī* (prophet), follows from the saying of Allah the Mighty and Glorious: "Inform them of their names" [2, 31].

And among the proofs of the superiority of Adam over the angels is the command of Allah to the angels to prostrate themselves before Adam, in accordance with His word: "So the angels fell prostrate, all of them together" [15, 30]. And Allah commands prostration only before one who is superior. Their prostration to Allah was due to their utter subjection and obedience, and their prostration to Adam was out of respect for the prophets and Imāms whom He had placed in his loins. And the Prophet said: I am superior to Gabriel and Michael

<sup>1</sup> The majority hold that prophets are superior to angels; *MC*, 200 (citing al-Baghdādī). The Mu'tazilites are divided on this point, loc. cit.; the Imāmites hold that the Imāms are also superior, *ibid.* 201. Some extreme Shi'ites, like the Bazīghiya (a group of the Khattābiya), hold themselves more excellent than angels, loc. cit. See also *EL*, iii. 191.

<sup>2</sup> لَأَنَّ اللَّهَ عَنْ وَجْلَ قَالَ لَهُمْ D ; وَ قَوْلُ الْمَلَائِكَةِ شَهَدَ عَنْ وَجْلَ لَمَّا قَالَ لَهُمْ N

<sup>3</sup> Reading with N ; D err. التَّمْنَى

and Isrāfil and to all the angels who are near (to Allah), and I am the best of mankind and the leader (*sayyid*) of the sons of Adam.

And as for the saying of Allah the Glorious and Mighty: “The Messiah will never scorn to be a slave to Allah, nor will the favoured angels” [4, 170], this does not prove their superiority over Jesus, on whom be peace. Allah the Mighty and Glorious said this only because there are among the people some who believe in the divinity of Jesus and worship him, and these are a class amongst the Christians; and there are others who worship the angels, and they are the Sabaeans and [137] some others.

And Allah the Mighty and Glorious said: “The Messiah will never scorn to be a slave of Allah” [4, 170], meaning that the Messiah and those who are worshipped, except Myself, will never scorn to be slaves to Me.

Angels are spiritual beings (not possessing gross bodies) and are sinless (*ma'sūm*). They never disobey Allah in what He commands them, and act as they are commanded. They neither eat, nor drink; neither pain nor disease ever comes upon them; nor does old age or decrepitude. Their food and drink consists of the glorification (*tasbīh*) and sanctification (*taqdīs*) of Allah. (The breath of) their life is the zephyr of the Throne of Allah (*'arsh*); and their beatitude is in (the acquisition) of different kinds of knowledge. Allah the Exalted created them by His Power, in the shape of lights and spirits,<sup>1</sup> as He

<sup>1</sup> *MC*, 199 (citing Muslim). So generally in tradition, *EI*, iii. 190. According to the *Ismā'ilis*, angels are of many kinds and ranks, but their essence (*jawhar*) is the same, *Tāju'l-'Aqā'id*, 'aqāida 23 (see *FC*). They may be likened, as Ivanow says, to laws of nature or natural forces, performing certain duties which are entrusted to them, like causing the spheres, stars, etc., to move in perfect order, *FC*, §88 (the text is fuller than the English summary and should be consulted). Further particulars, *FC*, pp. 56, 62, 64, 67, 68n. According to *KP*, 70,000 angels were created out of the light of the face of 'Ali, 87, 88; and 'Ali appeared to the Prophet as an exalted angel on the Night of the Ascension, 88. Good human souls later become angels, but bad ones, *diws* and *ghūls*, 92; angels are also *hudūdi dīn* (functionaries of religion), 96; and man possesses the human as well as angelic elements in his nature, 54.

willed and desired; and each class among them guards a species of created things.

And we asserted the superiority of some (Prophets, Imāms) over others (angels) because the position accorded to them amongst the varieties of things created by Allah is greater and more excellent than the position given to angels. And Allah knows best.<sup>1</sup>

### CHAPTER 35

#### THE BELIEF CONCERNING THE NUMBER OF PROPHETS (*anbiyā'*) AND VICEGERENTS (*awṣīyā'*)

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far: Our belief concerning their number is that in all there have been one hundred and twenty-four thousand prophets<sup>2</sup> and a like number of *awṣīyā'*.<sup>3</sup> Each

<sup>1</sup> Therefore apparently ordinary Shi'ites are not superior to angels, as the Sunnites hold the faithful to be, *MC*, 202.

<sup>2</sup> Browne, *Persian Literature*, iv. 387-388; Donaldson, 320. In Sunni dogmatics the numbers differ from 315 apostles (Ibn Sa'd) to 224,000; but Nasafī is non-committal, *MC*, 204; Macdonald, 312. It is also to be observed that here no difference is made between apostle (*rasūl*) and prophet (*nabī*). The distinction according to Sunnite doctrine appears to be that the former were sent each with a law and a book, while the latter, only to preach and to warn, *MC*, loc. cit. For distinction between *risāla* and *nubuwwa*, see Affifi, 95 and generally, *KP*, Ch. iv, pp. 52 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> The word *waṣī* is untranslateable in English, except in a legal context, where *executor* is an exact rendering. "Plenipotentiary" or "vicegerent" may also be used in certain cases. It has in Shi'itic works the following chief attributes: (1) *waṣī* is a person who is, by command of Allah, *specially instructed* and *authorized* by the *nabī* to perform certain acts. These are considered to be the commands of the *nabī* and the duties of the *waṣī*. (2) During the lifetime of the *nabī*, the *waṣī* holds a position next after him as vicegerent, *FC*, §31; and for particular religious and political functions, he acts as his plenipotentiary. (3) After the death of the *nabī*, the *waṣī* is his *khalīfa* (successor), his executor and the leader of the community, being the most excellent of men after the prophet, *FC*, §31. The distinction between him and the Imām is that the latter has not had the advantage of personal intimacy and direct instruction from the *nabī*, *KP*, 20; although in the absence of the *nabī*, the *waṣī* and the *imām* have similar powers. Thus *waṣī* is superior to *imām*, 'Ali being superior to all Imāms, *FC*, §§35, 36. It is for these reasons that the word *waṣī* has throughout been retained in the translation.

The term *waṣī* has very special associations in Ismā'ili thought, *FC*, §§30-31, 35. *Wisāyat* and *nubuwwat* are temporary institutions, but

*nabī* (prophet) had a *waṣī* to whom he gave instructions by the command of Allah. And concerning them we believe that they brought the truth from Allah, that their word is the word of Allah, that their command is the command of Allah, that obedience to them is obedience to Allah and that disobedience to them is disobedience to Allah.

They spoke not except on behalf of Allah, and on being inspired by Him. And verily the leaders [138] of the prophets are five in number round whom the heavens revolve,<sup>1</sup> and they are the masters of the religious paths (*ashābu'sh-sharā'i'*), namely, “the ones endued with firmness” [46, 34]—Noah, Abraham, Moses, Jesus and Muhammad, on all of whom be peace. Muhammad verily is their leader and the most excellent of them.<sup>2</sup> He brought the truth and confirmed (the message of) the apostles. Those who declared him to be a liar will suffer

*imāmat* is permanent and everlasting, §35. The substance of the *nabī* is closely connected with that of the *waṣī*, and the *waṣī* is the truest interpreter of the religion of the *nabī*, §31. The *Kalāmi Pīr* is full of the doctrine of *wiṣāyat* (or *waṣāyat*?) out of which a few points are worthy of mention. The *nabī* is the *nāfiq*, teacher of the revealed religion (*tanzīl*) and he always prepares (رَأَى كَذِيرَ) a *waṣī*, who is the teacher of the inner meaning (*ta'wīl*), pp. 18, 56, 57; every *nāfiq* has a *waṣī*, 57; the *waṣī* gives to every one *tanzīl* (*zāhir*) or *ta'wīl* (*bātin*) according to his ability, 56. On the meanings of the word وَسِيَّةٌ see Fyzee, *Ismāili Law of Wills*, 8.

<sup>1</sup> Reading دارت عليهم الرسى as in D: not الرسى دارت عليهم as in N. Cf. *MB*, s.v. حسا, p. 37. The expression in ordinary English means “on whom everything depends”.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *MC*, 113–115, where it is shown that at first no distinction was made; but later Muhammad's superiority was clearly accepted, Macdonald, 305 (*Ghazālī*), 312 (*Nasāfi*), 345 (*Fudālī*); *BHA*, §170; *FC*, §29. In *KP* there are expressions showing the identity of the substance of 'Ali and Muhammad, 79 sqq., and it is not at all clear whether 'Ali is not superior to the Prophet, cf. especially 74, where we have: “'Ali was the greatest among all the prophets and saints, pious and holy”. According to Ibnu'l-'Arabī, the reality of Muhammad is identified with the *logos*, Affifi, 70; Muhammad is therefore the centre of the Sūfi hierarchy—the *Qutb*, 71 et seq. The question of Prophecy from the Western Ismā'īlī point of view is dealt with in Abū Ḥātim ar-Rāzī's *A'lāmu'n-Nubuwā* (W. Ivanow, *Guide to Ism. Lit.*, No. 19) and other works.

a painful agony. And those who believed in him and honoured and helped<sup>1</sup> him, and followed the light<sup>2</sup> which descended with him—they are the successful and the victorious ones.

It is necessary to believe that Allah the Mighty and Glorious did not create any created thing more excellent than Muhammad and the Imāms, peace on them, that they are the most loved of creatures in the eyes of Allah, and the most noble and the foremost among them, on account of their acceptance of Him (as their Lord). When Allah took the pledge (*mīthāq*) of the prophets and “ required them to bear witness of themselves (saying): Am I not your Lord ? and they said: yea, verily ” [7, 171].

And verily Allah sent His prophet Muhammad (with a message) to the other prophets in the world of atoms (*adh-dharr*).<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Reading ‘azzarūhu.

<sup>2</sup> Browne, *Lit. His.*, iv. 388; *KP*, Intr. xxxviii, 85. Ibnu'l-'Arabī holds that saintship can only be derived from this “ light ”, and in this he is under the influence of Ḥallāj, *Affifi*, 74, 92, 189.

<sup>3</sup> Before the atoms were put together by Allah and the mass shaped into different forms. This shows how early the excellence of Muhammad was recognized. This is a reference to the interesting legend regarding the covenant of Adam and his descendants referred to in Qur. 7, 171-173.

ذر is obviously used for its affinity with ذرهم and may mean either “ atoms ” or “ ants ”. The descendants of Adam, prior to the creation of this physical world, were made to appear to him in the shape of ants : Baydāwī, ed. Fleischer, i. 352<sub>15-17</sub> (com. to Qur. 7, 172); *MB*, s.v. وَنَقَ

أَخْدَهُ مِنَّا مِنَّا شَيْئَنَا بِالْوَلَايَةِ وَ هُمْ ذرَّ يَوْمَ أَخْدَهُ مِنَّا عَلَى الدَّرَّ - تَوْضِيْحٍ : أَنَّ الْأَرْوَاحَ تَعْلَقَتْ ذَلِكَ الْيَوْمَ بِجَهَنَّمْ صَغِيرٌ مِثْلُ التَّمَلِ دَعَاهُمْ إِلَى الْإِقْرَارِ فَأَفَرَّ بَعْضُهُمْ وَ أَنْكَرَ بَعْضُهُمْ، Thus God took the twofold covenant from mankind : (a) the unity of Allah, and (b) the priority in excellence of the Prophet Muhammad. In this manner not only mankind, but all the Prophets testified to these two dogmas, *tawhīd* and *khātamīya*. *MB* goes further and mentions also the *wadā'a* as part of the covenant. Cf. also Wensinck, *Handbook*, s.v. Adam, 11b.

It is necessary to emphasize, as is done in the explanations, that all this happened in a spiritual sense and in a spiritual world, not actually and in a physical sense; and this world is the عَالَمُ الدَّرَّ (the world of atoms or ants), whereas ; فِي عَالَمِ الدَّرَّ فِي الدَّرَّ stands for the covenant itself.

And verily Allah the Mighty and Glorious gave to each prophet (i.e. knowledge, power, etc.) according to the extent of his cognition (*ma'rifa*),<sup>1</sup> while the cognition of our Prophet Muhammad was greater and more sublime,<sup>2</sup> for it took precedence in accepting Allah (as the Supreme Being).

We believe that Allah, Blessed and Exalted is He above all, created the whole of creation for him (the Prophet) and for the People of his House, and that but for them, Allah, Glory be to Him, would not have created the heavens or the earth, Paradise or Hell, Adam or Eve, the angels or (any) created thing (*shay'*)—the Blessings of Allah upon them all.

And our belief is that after His Prophet, the Blessings of Allah upon him, the proofs<sup>3</sup> of Allah for the people are the Twelve Imāms,<sup>4</sup> the first of them being the Prince of Believers 'Alī b. Abī Tālib, then al-Hasan, then al-Ḥusayn, then 'Alī [139] b. al-Ḥusayn, then Muḥammad b. 'Alī, then Ja'far b. Muḥammad, then Mūsā b. Ja'far, then 'Alī b. Mūsā ar-Ridā, then Muḥammad b. 'Alī, then 'Alī b. Muḥammad, then al-Hasan b. 'Alī, then Muḥammad b. al-Hasan the Proof (*al-hujja*), who upholds the command of Allah (*al-qā'im bi-amri'l-lāh*), the Master of Time (*sāhibu'z-zamān*), the Vicegerent (*khalifa*) of the

---

The rendering “world of atoms” appears to be more in consonance with the real significance in English than the expression “world of ants”. From the traditions it would appear that the descendants of Adam appeared to him as a huge cluster of ants; it may also be suggested—and the metaphor is even more beautiful—that they appeared to him as innumerable particles floating in a beam of light.

The idea of the excellence of the Prophet appears to be of gradual growth; originally no distinction was made between the various apostles, *MC*, 115, 191 (*Fiqh Akbar* II., art. 6), 215. The *mīthāq* was originally between God and man; then it was made to include the Prophet's excellence over all the other prophets, and finally the Shi'a engrafted upon it the doctrine of *walāya* as well.

<sup>1</sup> *FC*, §28. This is clearly in anticipation of the Sūfi doctrine, *Affif*, 74, 92, 189.

<sup>2</sup> Reading as in D

<sup>3</sup> *FC*, §38.

<sup>4</sup> On the Imāmate generally see Browne, iv. 391-395; *BHA*, §§174-218, esp. §210; Donaldson, D. M., *The Shi'ite Religion* (London, 1933), 305-338; *FC*, §§30-42; *KP*, xxxviii, and Index.

Beneficent One (*rahmān*) in His earth, the one who is present in the earth<sup>1</sup> but invisible (*ghā'ib*) to the eyes—the Blessings of Allah on all of them.<sup>2</sup>

Our belief regarding them is that they are in authority (*ulū'l-amr*). It is to them that Allah has ordained obedience,<sup>3</sup> they are the witnesses for the people and they are the gates of Allah (*abwāb*) and the road (*sabil*) to Him and the guides (*dālīl*, pl. *adilla*) thereto, and the repositories<sup>4</sup> of His knowledge and the interpreters of His revelations and the pillars of His unity (*tawḥīd*). They are immune from sins (*khaṭā'*) and errors (*zalal*); they are those from whom “Allah has removed all impurity and made them absolutely pure” [33, 33]; they are possessed of (the power of) miracles and of (irrefutable) arguments (*dala'il*); and they are for the protection of the people of this earth just as the stars are for the inhabitants of the heavens. They may be likened, in this community, to the Ark of Noah; he who boards it obtains salvation or reaches the Gate of Repentance (*hittā*).<sup>5</sup>

They are the most noble slaves of Allah, who “speak not until He hath spoken; they act by His command” [21, 27]. And we believe that love for them is true belief (*imān*) and hatred for them is unbelief (*kufr*); that their command is the command of Allah, their prohibition is the prohibition of Allah; obedience to them is obedience to Allah, and disobedience to them is disobedience to Allah; their friend (*wālī*)<sup>6</sup> is the friend of Allah, and their enemy the enemy of Allah.

<sup>1</sup> Lit. “present in the cities (*amṣār*).”

<sup>2</sup> Browne, iv. 394; Donaldson, *Shi'ite Religion*, 227 sqq.; *BHA*, §§210, 211, 217.

<sup>3</sup> Ref. to Qur. 4, 62. *BHA*, §211.

<sup>4</sup> N. عَبْيَةٌ; D. مَهْبِطٌ. *'ayba* is a leather bag; metaphorically, it is also used for a person who is a repository of one's secrets (Lane).

<sup>5</sup> Qur. 2, 55; 7, 161. So Pickthall. The word means “remission, laying down the burden of sins” (Palmer); or “forgiveness” (Rodwell).

<sup>6</sup> لَّا, with the *kasr* of the *wāw* is “authority”, “power”, “sovereignty”; and with the *fatha*, is “love”, “devotion”—<sup>وَالنَّعْصَانُ</sup> *MB*, s.v. لَّا, 97. This is the general meaning; the theological concept is on p. 99:

We believe that the earth cannot be without the Proof (*hujja*) of Allah to His creatures—a leader either manifest (*zāhir*)

الولاية بالفتح عبّة أهل البيت و اتباعهم في الدين و امثال أوامرهم و نواهيم  
و التأسي بهم في الأعمال و الأخلاق، و أمّا معرفة حقوقهم و اعتقاد الإمامة فيهم فذلك  
من أصول الدين لامن فروع العلمية .

It therefore involves: (1) love and devotion to the People of the House (*ahlu'l-bayt*) of the Prophet, namely, the Imāms; (2) following them in religion; (3) obedience to their commands and abstention from their prohibitions; (4) imitation of their actions and conduct; and, finally, (5) recognition of their rights and belief in their Imāmate,—this being a basic principle of religion, not a mere scholastic deduction. SUNNIS.—There is a *ḥadīth* that there can be no faith without love of Muhammad's family, Wensinck, *Handbook*, 169 (citing Tirmidhī 46, 28, etc.). ITHNĀ 'ASHARIYA.—*Walāya* is a basic principle, Browne, iv. 394-395; Donaldson, 344-345 (citing *Hayātū'l-Qulūb* of Majlisi), 346, 247. In *BHA*, the whole section on Imāmate, §§179 sqq., necessarily involves this belief and shows the importance given to it. ISMĀ'ILIS.—The Western (Mustālian) Ismā'ilis regard *walāya* as the first and the most important of the seven pillars (*da'ā'im*) of religion. In the *Da'ā'imul-Islām*, vol. I, beg., it is related on the authority of Imām Ja'far as-Ṣādiq: *فِي إِسْلَامِ عَلِيٍّ سِبْعَ دَاعِمَاتٍ، الْوَلَايَةُ وَهِيَ أُولَئِكَ وَأَنْصَلَاهَا، وَهَا وَبِالْوَلَايَةِ يُوَصَّلُ إِلَى مَعْرِفَتِهَا*, Cf. also Fyzee, *Ismaili Law of Wills*, p. 1, n. 1 and *JRAS* for 1934, p. 22; *FC*, p. 9 and §69. The basis of the doctrine appears to be the *waṣīya* of 'Ali in the *Da'ā'imul-Islām*, vol. II (see Fyzee, *Ismaili Law of Wills*, §9). 'Ali first asks for devotion, citing Qur. 42, 22 (*ibid.*, 70); then before laying down the principles of religion, i.e. *tahāra*, *salāt*, etc., he again mentions *walāya* (p. 71); intercession will not be available to those who do not recognize 'Ali's right and the rights of the *ahlu'l-bayt* (p. 72); "I enjoin you to be devoted to us the People of the House, for God has coupled obedience to us with obedience to Him and His Messenger" (p. 74). The *waṣīya* of 'Ali is cited widely in Ismā'ili works both ancient, like the '*Uyūnū'l-Akhbār* of Sayyid-nā 'Imādū'd-din Idris b. Ḥasan, and modern, like *Sirājū'l-Hudā'l-Munīr* by Sardār Sayyid-nā Ṭāhir Sayfū'd-dīn, the present *dā'i* of the Dā'ūdi Bohoras, A.H. 1352, pp. 85-95. Among the Eastern (Nizārian) Ismā'ilis, the doctrine of *walāya* is extended still further. *Walāya* is an essential part of belief, *KP*, 36, 89; he who dies without recognizing the Imām of the time dies a *kāfir*, 27, 48, 61, 69; calumny of 'Ali means exclusion from grace, 37; closeness of 'Ali and the Prophet, 74; and finally, *wilāya* (not *walāya*) as a rank, is superior to *nubuwwa*, for the light of *nubuwwa*, is inferior to the light of *wilāya*, xxxviii, 74, 86.

and well-known (*mashhūr*),<sup>1</sup> or hidden (*khāfi*)<sup>2</sup> and obscure (*maghmūr*).

We believe that [140] the Proof of Allah in His earth and His vicegerent (*khalifa*) among His slaves in this age of ours is the Upholder (*al-Qā'im*) (of the law of Allah), the Expected One (*al-Muntazzar*), Muḥammad b. al-Ḥasan b. ‘Alī b. Muḥammad b. ‘Alī b. Mūsā b. Ja‘far b. Muḥammad b. ‘Alī b. al-Ḥusayn b. ‘Alī b. Abī Tālib, on them be peace. He it is concerning whose name and descent the Prophet was informed by Allah the Mighty and Glorious, and he it is WHO WILL FILL THE EARTH WITH JUSTICE AND EQUITY, JUST AS NOW IT IS FULL OF OPPRESSION AND WRONG.<sup>3</sup> And he it is through whom Allah will make His faith manifest “in order to supersede all religion, though the polytheists may dislike (it)” [9, 33; 48, 28; 61, 9]. He it is whom Allah will make victorious over the whole world until from every place the call to prayer will be heard, and all religion<sup>4</sup> will belong entirely to Allah, Exalted is He above all. He it is, who is the Rightly Guided (*mahdī*), about whom the Prophet gave information that when he appears, Jesus<sup>5</sup>, son of Mary, will descend upon the earth and pray behind him, and he who prays behind him is like one who prays behind the Prophet of Allah, because he is his vicegerent (*khalifa*).

And we believe that there can be no *Qā'im* other than him; he may live in the state of occultation (as long as he likes); and were he to live in the state of occultation for the space of the existence of this world, there would nevertheless be no *Qā'im* other than him. For, the Prophet and the *Imāms* have indicated

<sup>1</sup> N omits مشهوراً.

<sup>2</sup> N err. for عائداً. *Tājū'l-'Aqā'id*, *FC*, §37, does not accept the *ghayba* of the *Imām*.

<sup>3</sup> This phrase is very common in Shi'itic literature and forms part of the *mahdī* tradition in general, cf. Iṣr. Friedlaender in *JAOS*, vol. xxix, 30-31; Shahrastani, 17<sub>7</sub>, 133<sub>1</sub>, etc.; *BHA*, §211 (pen.). See also p. 124, below.

<sup>4</sup> Reading with D و يكون الدين كله

<sup>5</sup> Reading with D و انه إذا نزل عيسى

him by his name and descent; him they appointed as their successor, and of him they gave glad tidings—the Blessings of Allah on all of them.<sup>1</sup>

I have extracted this chapter from the *Kitābu'l-Hidāya*.

### CHAPTER 36

#### THE BELIEF CONCERNING INFALLIBILITY ('iṣma)<sup>2</sup>

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far: Our belief concerning the prophets (*anbiyā'*),<sup>3</sup> apostles (*rusul*), Imāms and angels is that

<sup>1</sup> The Twelfth Imām is in some respects similar to the *mahdī* of the Sunnis, *MC*, 243, 244. The descent of Jesus is also generally accepted, Wensinck, *Handbook*, 113, where it is stated that he will descend in Syria, kill the anti-Christ, appear as Imām, destroy the cross, kill the swine, and restore Islam to its pristine purity; he resides miraculously in the Heavens. Cf. also *mahdī*, Wensinck, *Handbook*, 139. For a full discussion of *mahdī*, as distinguished from Imām, see *EI*, iii. 111-115, s.v. *Mahdī*. Among the Shi'a the traditions and books about the 12th Imām are legion; the following are a few general references, Browne, iv. 394; Donaldson, 226-241; R. Strothmann in *EI*, ii. 642, s.v. *al-ķā'īm* (many references); *BHA*, §§210, 211, 217; in §211 the 12th Imām is declared as the greatest (*afdal*) of all the Imāms, *an-Nāfi' yāwmi'l-Hashr*, Bombay ed. 58, Najaf ed. 78.

<sup>2</sup> The word 'iṣma, translated by Wensinck in *MC* as *impeccability*, by Miller in *BHA* as "immunity to sin" and by W. Ivanow as "infallibility", needs further explanation in view of its doctrinal importance in Shi'itic literature. The root 'aṣama, ya'ṣimu, 'aṣman, means, according to Lane, prevented, hindered, protected, defended, preserved, withheld, etc. And 'iṣma is prevention, hindrance, defence, protection; its primary significance being tying or binding. حُصْنَةُ الْأَبْيَاءِ is explained in *Tāju'l-'Arūs* as God's preservation of the prophets, first, by the peculiar endowment of them with essential purity of constitution; then by the conferring of large and highly-esteemed excellences; then by aid against opponents, and rendering their feet firm; then by sending down upon them tranquillity (*as-sakīna*, Qur. 9, 26, etc.) and the preservation of their hearts or minds, and adaptation to that which is right. Whence we have "a defence from the state of perdition" and finally, "a faculty of avoiding acts of disobedience, with possession of power to commit them".

This is the positive quality which is believed by the Shi'a to be the peculiar possession of the Imāms. It is a state of sinlessness and infallibility or immunity to sin, resulting from a characteristic of their nature, which is a miraculous gift of Allah. It is also fully explained in *MB*, s.v. حُصْنَةٌ; also *EI*, ii. 543 (Ign. Goldziher) and *BHA*, notes to para 174 at p. 98.

<sup>3</sup> The 'iṣma of the prophets is accepted by Sunnis to a limited extent; Fakhru'd-dīn Rāzī being a great supporter of the dogma, Goldziher, op. cit.;

they are infallible (*ma'sūm*); purified [141] from all defilement (*danas*), and that they do not commit any sin, whether it be minor (*saghīra*) or major (*kabīra*). They do not disobey Allah in what He has commanded them; they act in accordance with His behests. He who denies infallibility to them in any matter appertaining to their status is ignorant of them, and such a one is a *kāfir* (unbeliever).<sup>1</sup>

Our belief concerning them is that they are infallible and possess the attributes of perfection, completeness and knowledge, from the beginning to the end of their careers. Defects (*naqṣ*) cannot be attributed to them, nor disobedience (*'isyān*), nor ignorance (*jahl*), in any of their actions (*ahwāl*).

## CHAPTER 37

### THE BELIEF CONCERNING THE DENIAL OF EXCESS (*ghulūww*) AND DELEGATION (*tafwīd*)

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far: Our belief concerning those who exceed the bounds of belief (*ghālibīn*, pl. *ghulāt*) and those who believe in delegation (*al-mufawwida*)<sup>2</sup> is that they are

Donaldson, 337; *MC*, 217-218; but the Sunnite tradition contains nothing of '*isma*', while the Shi'a lay great emphasis on it. It is the *Fiqh Akbar* II which, under Shi'ite influence, developed the dogma of Muhammad's infallibility, *MC*, 218. It was claimed by Ibn Tūmārt, Macdonald, 247, 292, 347 (al-Fuḍālī); *BHA*, §§164-173 (see Miller's note to §164 at p. 97).

<sup>1</sup> Browne, iv. 394-395; Donaldson, 320-338 gives a very valuable account of '*isma*', the nine proofs whereof will be found on p. 321; *BHA*, §§179-185; *FO*, §§37, 41, 56; *KP*, xlili (*Imām*), xlvi, 94 (*hujja*).

<sup>2</sup> W. Ivanow translates *ghulūww* as extremism in Shi'itic belief. These terms are explained by the Urdu translator. He says: The *ghulāt* are those who believe 'Ali to be God or prophet, a claim which he himself would not make. This explanation is clearly taken from *MB*:

الغالى من يقول فى أهل البيت ما لا يقولون فى أنفسهم كمن يدعى فىهم النبوة والإلهية، *MB*, s.v. على, 67<sub>5</sub>. The *mufawwida* are those who believe that God created the Prophet and 'Ali and then ceased to function. Thereafter it was these two who arranged everything in the world. They create and sustain and destroy; Allah has nothing to do with these things, *MB*, 372. On the *ghulāt* see also Browne, iv. 395. The MS. copy of the *I'tiqādāt* in the Asafiyah Library, Hyderabad, No. 7909 (Hadith, 333), vocalizes 'it *mufawwada*.

deniers (*kuffār*) of Allah, Glory be to His name. They are more wicked than the Jews, the Christians, the Fire-Worshippers, the Qadarites<sup>1</sup> or the Kharijites (*harūriya*),<sup>2</sup> or any of the heretics (*ahlu'l-bid'a*) or those who hold views which lead astray (*al-ahwā'u'l-madilla*). None have belittled Allah more, Glory be to Him; as Allah says: "It is not possible for any human being unto whom Allah has given the scripture and wisdom and the prophethood that he should afterwards have said unto mankind: Be slaves of me instead of Allah; but (what he said was): Be ye faithful servants of the Lord by virtue of your constant teaching of the Scripture and of your constant study thereof [3, 73]. And he commanded you not that ye should take the angels and the prophets for lords. Would he command you to disbelieve after ye had become Muslims ?" [ibid., 74].

And He said, Mighty and Glorious is He: "Do not be excessive in your belief" [4, 169; 5, 81].

Our belief concerning the Prophet is that he was poisoned during the expedition of Khaybar. The poison continued to be noxious to him until it cut his aorta and then he died from its effects.<sup>3</sup>

And the Prince of Believers, on whom be peace, [142] was murdered by 'Abdu'r-Rahmān b. Muljam al-Murādī,<sup>4</sup> may Allah curse him, and he was buried in Ghārī.<sup>5</sup> [I IMĀM]

<sup>1</sup> This is a peculiar use of the word *qadarīya*, because as Wensinck has shown, they did not believe in evil coming from God and were really nearer to the Mu'tazila and the Shi'a, *MC*, 52, 53. It is really their other beliefs, for instance, rejection of the popular eschatology, *ibid.*, 119, and of Heaven and Hell, 166, and other doctrines that made them hated.

<sup>2</sup> The Qadarites and Khārijites are omitted in D, but the translator inserts them in the Urdu rendering.

<sup>3</sup> The usually accepted view is that the Prophet died of fever at Medina, Fr. Buhl in *EI*, iii. 656; Tor Andreea, *Mohammed* (Eng. Tr. 1936), 242.

<sup>4</sup> So in D. 'Ali died 21 Ram. 40/27 Jan. 661, *EI*, i. 284.

<sup>5</sup> *MB*, s.v. غری, 66 explains that *ghārī* (الغری كنفی) is a magnificent building, and the "two *ghārīs*" in Kūfa is the place where 'Ali b. Abī Tālib was buried. Cf. also *Maqātūl-t-Tālibiyān*, (Najaf, 1263), p. 28; and for a modern description, Donaldson, 54 sqq.

And Hasan b. 'Alī, on both of whom be peace,—he was poisoned by his wife Ja'da bint Ash'ath of Kinda, may Allah curse them both, and he died on account of that.<sup>1</sup> [II IMĀM]

And Husayn b. 'Alī was slain at Karbala. His murderer was Sinān b. Anas an-Nakha'i, the curse of Allah on them both.<sup>2</sup> [III IMĀM]

And 'Alī b. Husayn, the Sayyid Zaynu'l-Ābidin, was poisoned by al-Walīd b. 'Abdu'l-Malik, Allah curse him.<sup>3</sup> [IV IMĀM]

And Muḥammad al-Bāqir b. 'Alī was poisoned by Ibrāhīm b. al-Walīd, may Allah curse him.<sup>4</sup> [V IMĀM]

And Ja'far aṣ-Ṣādiq was poisoned by Abū Ja'far al-Maṇṣūr ad-Dawāniqī, may Allah curse him.<sup>5</sup> [VI IMĀM]

And Mūsā al-Kāẓim b. Ja'far was poisoned by Hārūnū'r-Rashīd, may Allah curse him.<sup>6</sup> [VII IMĀM]

And 'Alī ar-Ridā b. Mūsā was poisoned by Ma'mūn, may Allah curse him.<sup>7</sup> [VIII IMĀM]

And Abū Ja'far Muḥammad at-Taqī b. 'Alī was poisoned by al-Mu'taṣim, may Allah curse him.<sup>8</sup> [IX IMĀM]

And 'Alī an-Naqī b. Muḥammad was poisoned by al-Mutawakkil, may Allah curse him.<sup>9</sup> [X IMĀM]

And Hasan al-'Askarī b. 'Alī was poisoned by al-Mu'tamid, may Allah curse him.<sup>10</sup> [XI IMĀM]

And our belief is that these events actually occurred, and that there was no doubt in the minds of the people regarding the Imāms' affairs, as some of those who exceed the bounds

<sup>1</sup> Donaldson, 66 sqq. Died A.H. 49, *EI*, ii. 274.

<sup>2</sup> *ibid.*, 79 sqq. Died 10 Muh. 61/10 Oct. 680, *EI*, ii. 339.

<sup>3</sup> *ibid.*, 101 sqq. D adds *نَفَلَ وَدُفِنَ بِالقَعْدَةِ*. Died 92/710-711 or 94/712-713.

<sup>4</sup> *ibid.*, 112 sqq. Died A.H. 114, 117 or 118, *EI*, iii. 670.

<sup>5</sup> *ibid.*, 129 sqq. Died 148/765, *EI*, i. 993.

<sup>6</sup> *ibid.*, 152 sqq. Died 183/799, *EI*, iii. 741.

<sup>7</sup> *ibid.*, 161 sqq. Died 203/818, *EI*, i. 296.

<sup>8</sup> *ibid.*, 188 sqq. Died 220/835, Browne, iv. 394.

<sup>9</sup> *ibid.*, 209 sqq. Died 245/868, Browne, loc. cit.

<sup>10</sup> *ibid.*, 217 sqq. Died 260/873. On Imāms generally, Browne, iv. 391-395.

(of belief) allege.<sup>1</sup> On the contrary the people witnessed their murder really and truly, and not by conjecture (*hisbān*) or fancy (*khaylūa*) or doubt (*shakk*) or false allegation (*tuhma*). He who asserts that some person or persons were substituted for one of the Imāms, or some of them, is not of our religion and we have nothing in common with him.

And verily the Prophet and Imāms, on whom be peace, had informed (people) that they would all be murdered. He who says that they were not murdered has verily given them the lie. [143] And he who declares them to be false has imputed falsehood to Allah, the Mighty and Glorious, and denied Him and goes out of Islam. "And whoso seeketh religion other than al-Islām, it shall not be accepted from him, and he will be a loser in the Hereafter" [3, 79].

And Imām ‘Alī ar-Ridā, on whom be peace, used to say in his prayer: O God, I seek absolution from Thee in respect of Thy Strength and Power.<sup>2</sup> There is neither strength nor power save in Thee. O God, I declare myself before Thee as having nothing to do with those who assert in respect of us things which we ourselves do not know. O God, to Thee belongs creation and Thou possessest the power of command; "Thee (alone) do we worship and from Thee do we seek help" [1, 4]. O God, Thou art our Creator, and the Creator of our ancestors, near and remote. O God, none deserves lordship save Thee; and divinity befits none except to Thee. So do Thou curse the Christians who belittled Thy greatness, and do Thou curse those who declare Thee to resemble Thy creature. O God, verily we are Thy slaves and the sons of Thy slaves. We have no power over ourselves in respect of profit, loss, death, life or resurrection (*nushūr*).

<sup>1</sup> Some apparently believed that the Imāms were miraculously translated to Heaven. The expression *ما شَيْءَ لِلنَّاسِ* is reminiscent of Qur. 4,

156 regarding the death of Jesus.

<sup>2</sup> This apparently means: I declare that I have nothing to do with the belief that in strength or power any one can be Thy equal.

O God, he who asserts that we (the Imāms) have the power of creation and of providing (for mankind),—we (Imāms) seek absolution from Thee in respect of him, an absolution similar to that of Jesus, son of Mary, in respect of the Christians. O God, we have never called upon them to assert what they do assert; so do not punish us for what they say and forgive us for what they allege. “ My Lord! leave not one of the disbelievers in the land ” [71, 27]. “ If Thou shouldst leave them they will mislead Thy slaves and will beget none save lewd ingrates ” [ibid., 28].

And it is related from Zurāra that he said: I said to Imām Ja'far aş-Şādiq that a man from among the descendants of 'Abdu'l-lāh b. Sabā' is a believer in (the doctrine of) delegation *tafwīd*. And he said: [144] And what is *tafwīd* ? I (Zurāra) said: According to him Allah, the Mighty and Glorious, (in the first instance) created Muhammad and 'Alī, and then delegated the matter (of creation) to them, and these two created and gave sustenance, and caused life and death. The Imām said: He, the enemy of Allah, has lied. When you return to him recite to him the verse of the Chapter of The Thunder: “ Or assign they unto Allah partners who created the like of His creation so that the creation (which they made and His creation) seemed alike to them ? Say: Allah is the Creator of all things, and He is the One, the Almighty ” [13, 17]. Then I went to the man and informed him of what Imām Ja'far aş-Şādiq had said. And he became as if I had forced him to swallow stones or as though he were struck dumb.

Now (undoubtedly) Allah has delegated matters concerning religion to His Prophet and He, the Mighty and Glorious, says: “ And whatsoever the Messenger giveth you, take it. And whatsoever he forbiddeth, abstain (from it) ” [59, 7]. And this (that is, religious authority) has also been delegated to the Imāms.

The sign of the Delegators (*al-mufawwida*) and the Extremists (*al-ghulāt*) and their likes is the belief that their shaykhs<sup>1</sup> and ulema have attributed less than their due (to the

<sup>1</sup> Reading with N مشائخ قم ; D مشائخ قم

Imāms). And the sign of the Hallājites among the Extremists is the claim of Manifestation (*tajallī*)<sup>1</sup> in their devotion, in spite of their doctrinal belief in the abandonment of prayer and all the obligatory acts (*farā'id*),<sup>2</sup> and (also) their claim of knowing the Most High Names of Allah<sup>3</sup> and their claim of the incarnation (*intibā'*) of the Divine Being in bodily shape for them.<sup>4</sup> For according to them the saint (*walī*), when he is purified and knows their religion, becomes more excellent than the Prophets. Their distinguishing characteristic is the claim that they know alchemy. They know nothing of it, except the counterfeiting and silvering of brass<sup>5</sup> and lead (for deceiving) Muslims. O God, do not include us among them and curse them.

### CHAPTER 38

#### THE BELIEF CONCERNING EVIL-DOERS (*zālimūn*)

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far: Our belief concerning them (*zālimūn*) is that they are accursed [145] and dissociation from

<sup>1</sup> *Tajallī* means the manifestation of the Deity to human beings as a vision. Compare *FC*, 12 and the *visio beatifica* of the Catholics, *MC*, 65. *Tajallī*, according to Ibnu'l-'Arabī, is "the eternal and everlasting self-manifestation", Affifi, 61; this is different from the Emanations of the neo-Platonists, 62; the mystic gains perfect knowledge by *tajallī*, 109; Ibnu'l-'Arabī's complete pantheism, 141; the greatest happiness is the realization of the inseparable unity with God, 168. *KP*, p. 68, tr., n. 1. Apparently however, as Dr. Affifi explains, *tajallī* (manifestation) is different from *inbi'āth* (emanation), op. cit., 62. But see *tajallīyi awwal*, *KP*, 72, and —*shuhūd*, ibid., 82. It would seem that *inbi'āth* is connected with the process of creation, while *tajallī* takes place after creation and depends to some extent upon the gnosis of the saint.

<sup>2</sup> Among the Nizārian Ismā'īlis, people with proper knowledge of the secrets of religion are exempt from the outward prescriptions of the law, *KP*, 95.

<sup>3</sup> Knowledge of اَسْمَ اللَّهِ الْاَكْبَرِ "the most great name of Allah" has great significance among Sūfis. See generally the works cited by L. Massignon in the article on *taṣawwuf* in *EI*, iv. 681.

<sup>4</sup> Incarnation (*hulūl*) and metempsychosis (*tanāsukh*) are rejected both by Musta'lian and Nizārian Ismā'īlis, *KP*, xlix, n. 2 and see above, note 4 to page 65.

<sup>5</sup> Reading with N تُنْفِقُ الشَّيْءَ D ; تُنْفِيَنَ الشَّيْءَ is also possible, meaning "they pass off brass and lead as current coin among the Muslims".

them is necessary. Allah the Mighty and Glorious says: "For evil-doers there will be no helpers" [2, 273; 3, 189; 5, 76]. And Allah says, Exalted is He: "Who doeth greater wrong than he who inventeth a lie concerning Allah? Such will be brought before their Lord and witnesses will say: These are they who lied concerning their Lord. Behold! The curse of Allah is upon the wrong-doers, who debar (men) from the way of Allah, and would have it crooked, and who are disbelievers in the Hereafter" [11, 21-22]. Ibn 'Abbās in explaining this verse says: Verily, in this context, by "the way of Allah" (*sabīl Allāh*) is meant 'Alī b. Abī Tālib and the Imāms, on whom be peace.

And in the Book of Allah (are mentioned) two kinds of leaders: he who guides rightly and he who leads astray. And Allah the Exalted says: "And We made them chiefs (or leaders) who guide by Our command" [21, 73; cp. 32, 24].

And Allah says: "And We made them patterns<sup>1</sup> that invite<sup>2</sup> unto the Fire, and on the Day of Resurrection they will not be helped. And We made a curse to follow them in this world and on the Day of Resurrection they will be among the hateful" [28, 41-42].

Now when the following verse was revealed: "And guard yourselves against a chastisement which cannot fall exclusively on those of you who are wrong-doers" [8, 25], the Prophet said: He who will wrong 'Alī as regards my successorship after my death, it is as though he has denied my apostleship and the apostleship of (all) the prophets before me, on whom be peace. And he who befriends the wrong-doer is himself a wrong-doer.

Allah the Mighty and Glorious says: "O ye who believe! Choose not your fathers, nor your brethren for friends if they prefer disbelief to faith. Whoso of you taketh them for friends, such are wrong-doers" [9, 23]. And He the Mighty and Glorious has said: "O ye who believe! Be not friendly with a folk with whom Allah is wroth, (a folk) who have despaired of the Hereafter as [146] the disbelievers despair of those who are in

<sup>1</sup> So for **لِئَلَّا**, lit. "leaders".

<sup>2</sup> N erroneously **يَدْعُونَ** instead of **يَهْدُونَ**.

the graves" [60, 13]. And He the Mighty and Glorious says: "Thou wilt not find folk who believe in Allah and the Last Day loving those who oppose Allah and His Messenger, even though they be their fathers or their sons or their brethren or their kinsmen. As for such, He hath written faith upon their hearts . . ." [58, 22]. And He says, Exalted is He: "He among you who taketh them for friends is (one) of them. Lo! Allah guideth not wrong-doing folk" [5, 56]. And the Mighty and Glorious says: "And incline not toward those who do wrong lest the Fire touch you" [11, 115].

(The literal meaning of) *zulm* is the placing of a thing at a place which is not its own. So he who claims the *Imāmat*, not being an *Imām*, is an accursed wrong-doer (*zālim*).<sup>1</sup> And he who ascribes *Imāmat* to those who are not entitled to it, he too is an accursed wrong-doer.

And the Prophet said: He, who denies 'Alī his *Imāmat* after me, verily denies my apostleship (*nubuwwa*). And he who denies my apostleship has denied Allah His divinity.

And the Prophet, on whom be the blessings and mercy of Allah, said: O 'Alī, you will be the wronged one (*mazlūm*) after me; and he who wrongs you has verily wronged me; and he who acts justly towards you has verily acted justly towards me; and he who denies your (claims) has verily denied mine; and he who befriends you has verily befriended me; and he who treats you as an enemy has verily treated me as an enemy<sup>2</sup>; and he who obeys you has verily obeyed me; and he who disobeys you has verily disobeyed me.<sup>3</sup>

And our belief concerning him, who denies the *Imāmat* to the Prince of Believers 'Alī b. Abī Tālib, on whom be peace, and the *Imāms* after him, is that he is the like of him who denies the apostleship of all the prophets, on whom be peace.<sup>4</sup> And our

<sup>1</sup> *BHA*, §185 (on p. 68, "(4) Fourth . . ." is really paragraph 185), and §209 (p. 78).

<sup>2</sup> Reading as in D ﷺ, not ﷺ as in N.

<sup>3</sup> Compare Fyzee, *Ismaili Law of Wills*, 70-71. Equality of 'Alī and the Prophet, *BHA*, p. 71, line 1. *FC*, §§40-45.

<sup>4</sup> *FC*, §§48-49; the original Arabic is clear, but the summary is too brief to be explicit. *KP*, xi and references; Donaldson, 351-356.

belief concerning him, who believes in (the Imāmat of) the Prince of Believers and denies a single one of the Imāms after him, is that he is in the same position as one who accepts all the prophets but denies the apostleship of our Prophet Muḥammad. And [147] Imām Ja'far as-Ṣādiq said: He who denies the least among us is like him who denies (the claims of) the first among us.

And the Prophet said: The Imāms after me are twelve, the first of them is the Prince of Believers 'Alī b. Abī Tālib, and the last of them is the Mahdī (rightly-guided), the Qā'im (the upholder of the true religion); obedience to them is obedience to me and disobedience to them is disobedience to me; and he who denies one of them has verily denied me.

And Imām Ja'far as-Ṣādiq said: He who doubts in the infidelity (*kufr*) of our enemies who have wronged us is himself an infidel (*kāfir*).

And the Prince of Believers said: Ever since I was born I have always been wronged. When 'Aqīl used to suffer from ophthalmia (*ramad*), he used to say: Do not sprinkle eye-powder into my eyes, until you sprinkle it into 'Alī's, and they would do so although I had no ophthalmia.<sup>1</sup>

And our belief concerning him who fought 'Alī is that he was an unbeliever (*kāfir*),<sup>2</sup> on account of the saying of the Prophet, on whom be the blessings and peace of Allah: He, who fought 'Alī, fought me; and he, who waged war on 'Alī, waged war on me; and he, who waged war on me, did so against Allah. And (also) on account of his (Prophet's) saying to 'Alī and Fāṭima and Ḥasan and Ḥusayn, peace on all of them: I am the enemy of those who wage war against you, and at peace with those who are at peace with you.

And as for Fāṭima, the blessings of Allah and His peace be on her, our belief is that she is the leader of the women of the

فَيَقُولُ N ; فَيَقُولُ لَا تَذَرُونِي حَتَّى تَذَرُوا عَلَيْأَ فِي ذَرُونِي  
<sup>1</sup> Reading with D  
 لَا تَذَرُونِي حَتَّى تَذَرُوا عَلَيْأَ فِي ذَرُونِي.

؛ أَعْقَادُنَا فِيهِنْ قَاتِلٌ عَلَيْأَ فَانِه كَافِرٌ بِقَوْلِ النَّبِي صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ  
<sup>2</sup> Reading with D  
 [أَعْقَادُنَا فِيهِنْ قَاتِلٌ عَلَيْأَ] [فَانِه كَافِرٌ] قَوْلِه صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ.

world, both the earlier and the later ones.<sup>1</sup> And verily Allah the Mighty and Glorious is wroth with him who evokes her anger, and is well-pleased with him who pleases her, for He has weaned her and those who revere her from the Fire. And she left the world displeased with those who had wronged her and usurped her rights, and denied her the inheritance left by her father. The Prophet said: Verily, Fātīma is a part of myself; he who angers her has angered me, and he who gladdens her [148] has gladdened me. And the Prophet said: Verily Fātīma is a part of myself, and she is my spirit (*rūh*) which is between my two flanks.<sup>2</sup> What displeases her displeases me, and what gladdens her gladdens me.

And our belief is that absolution is necessary in respect of the four idols (*awthān*)<sup>3</sup>—Yaghūth, Ya‘ūq, Naṣr, and Hubal, and the four (female) idols (*andād*)<sup>4</sup>—al-Lāt, ‘Uzzā, Maṇāt, and Shi‘rā; also in respect of those who worship them, and all their partisans and followers. Verily these are the worst of Allah’s creatures, and the declaration (of belief in) Allah and His Messenger and of the Infallible Imāms does not become complete without seeking absolution as regards their enemies.

And our belief regarding those who killed the prophets and the Infallible Imāms is that they are unbelievers (*kuffār*) and polytheists (*mushrik*), who will for ever remain in the lowest

<sup>1</sup> Among the Shi‘a Fātīma is the noblest of women. Among Sunnites there are various views: *Was. Abi Han.*—Khadija, ‘Ā’isha, all others (*MC*, 130, par. 24). al-Baghdādi says that after Khadija there is a difference of opinion as regards ‘Ā’isha or Fātīma; but he finally lays down the following order: Fātīma, Khadija, ‘Ā’isha, Umm Salima. For Hafṣa (daughter of ‘Umar), see *MC*, 183-184. It may generally be said that among the Shi‘a the first place is always given to Fātīma, whereas among the Sunnis there is much divergence, although between Fātīma and Khadija the honours seem to very even. See s.v. Fātīma, Khadija, and ‘Ā’isha in Wensinck’s *Handbook*.

<sup>2</sup> *بَيْنَ جَنْبَيْنِ* appears to be an expression which implies that Fātīma was as close to the Prophet as his own body.

<sup>3</sup> Qur. 71, 23 where Hubal is not mentioned, see *MB*, s.v. *لَبَّ*.

<sup>4</sup> D. B. Macdonald, s.v. Allah in *EI*, i. 302; see Qur. 53, 19-20 where Shi‘rā is not mentioned.

stage of the Fire. And he, whose belief is other than what we have related, has not, according to us, any concern with the religion of Allah.

## CHAPTER 39

### THE BELIEF CONCERNING DISSIMULATION (*taqīya*)<sup>1</sup>

Says the Shaykh, may the mercy of Allah be on him: Our belief concerning *taqīya* (permissible dissimulation) is that it is obligatory, and he who forsakes it is in the same position as he who forsakes prayer.<sup>2</sup> Imām Ja'far as-Ṣādiq was told: O son of the Messenger of Allah, verily we see in the mosque one who openly abuses your enemies, calling out their names. And he said: May Allah curse him! Why does he refer to us? He, Who is Exalted above all, says: "Revile not those who invoke (deities) other than Allah, lest wrongfully they revile Allah through ignorance" [6, 108]. And Imām Ja'far in explaining this verse has said: So do not revile them, lest they revile your 'Alī. And he also said: He who reviles the friend (*walī*) of Allah (i.e. 'Alī) has reviled Allah. And the Prophet said: He who

<sup>1</sup> In the Delhi edition Ch. 39 deals with "the ancestors of the Prophet" and Ch. 40, with *taqīya*.

For a general account see R. Strothmann on *taqīya* in *EI*, iv. 628, where it is rendered "disguise" and in its technical sense "dispensation from the requirements of religion under compulsion or threat of injury". Professor Browne renders it "prudential concealment", *Per. Lit.*, iv. 17. Numerous instances of *taqīya* are mentioned by Donaldson (see index). *MO*, 107. The tradition books are full of *taqīya* in the chapters of *al-amr bi'l-ma'rif wa'n-nahy 'ani'l-munkar*, *Wasā'il*, ii. 467; *Mustadrak*, ii. 357 sqq. It is also recognized among Ismā'īlis, *KP*, 67; at p. 96 fasting is explained allegorically as keeping the tenets of true religion secret from others. *FO*, §49. In the *Da'ā'im* and *Mukhtasarū'l-Āthār* of Qādi Nu'mān, vol. ii, *kitābu'l-ashriba*, we have on the authority of Imām Ja'far:

النَّفَيَّةُ دِينٌ وَ دِينٌ آبَانِي فِي كُلِّ شَيْءٍ إِلَّا فِي تَحْرِيمِ السَّكَرِ الْعَلِيِّ.

<sup>2</sup> The Urdu translator explains that the real meaning of *taqīya* is the protection of the true religion from enemies by hiding it, in circumstances where there is fear of being killed or captured or insulted. But an essential condition is that on account of *taqīya* the true religion should not be destroyed, otherwise it is not permissible. Similarly the killing of a true believer (*mu'min*) is not *taqīya*.

reviles thee, [149] O 'Alī, has verily reviled me; and he, who reviles me, has verily reviled Allah.

Now until the Imām al-Qā'im appears, *taqīya* is obligatory and it is not permissible to dispense with it. He, who abandons it before the appearance of the Qā'im, has verily gone out of the religion of Allah, Exalted is He, and the religion of the Imāms, and disobeys Allah and His Messenger and the Imāms. Imām Ja'far was asked concerning the Word of Allah, Mighty and Glorious is He: "Verily the noblest among you, in the sight of Allah, is the most pious" [49, 13]. He said: (It means) he who adheres most scrupulously to the practice of *taqīya*.

And Allah, the Blessed and Exalted, has described the showing of friendship to unbelievers as being (possible only) in the state of *taqīya*. And He the Mighty and Glorious says: "Let not believers take disbelievers for their friends in preference to believers. Whoso doeth that hath no connection with Allah unless (it be) that ye but guard yourselves against them, for fear of being killed"<sup>1</sup> [3, 27]. And Allah the Mighty and Glorious says: "Allah doth not forbid you to deal with kindness and fairness toward those who have not made war upon you on account of your religion, or driven you forth from your homes: for Allah loveth those who act with fairness" [60, 8]. "Only Allah doth forbid you to make friends of those who, on account of your religion, have warred against you, and have driven you forth from your homes, and have aided those who drove you forth: and whoever maketh friends of them are wrong-doers" [ibid., 9].

And Imām Ja'far said: Verily, I hear a man abusing me in the mosque; and I hide myself behind a pillar so that he may not see me. And he (Imām Ja'far) said: Mix with the people (enemies) outwardly, but oppose them inwardly, so long as the Amirate (*imratun*) is a matter of opinion.<sup>2</sup> And he also said:

<sup>1</sup> So explained in *MB*. This phrase has been variously rendered: Palmer—"unless, indeed, ye fear from some danger from them"; Rodwell—"unless, indeed, ye fear a fear from them"; Pickthall—"taking (as it were) security".

<sup>2</sup> That is, until the rule of the rightful Imām is finally established. The Urdu rendering: جب تک کہ معاملہ دل ہی دل میں ہے—"So long as the matter remains in the hearts of men" is erroneous.

Verily diplomacy (*ar-ri'ā'*) with a true believer is a form of *shirk* (polytheism); but with a hypocrite (*munāfiq*) in his own house, it is worship. And he also said: [150] He who prays with them (hypocrites) standing in the first row, it is as though he prayed with the Prophet in the first row. And he also said: Visit their sick and attend their funerals and pray in their mosques. And he also said: (You should) become an ornament for us, and not a disgrace. And he said: May Allah have mercy on a person who inculcates friendship towards us among men, and does not provoke ill-will among them.

The story-tellers (*qassāṣūn*) were mentioned before Imām Ja'far, and he said: May Allah curse them, for they speak ill of us. And he was asked concerning the story-tellers, whether it is permissible to hear what they say, and he said: No. And Imām Ja'far said: He, who gives ear to a speaker, has verily rendered himself submissive to him; if the speaker (discourses) concerning Allah, then the listener has verily worshipped Allah, and if he speaks of the devil, then the listener has worshipped the devil.

And Imām Ja'far was asked concerning the Word of Allah, Exalted is He above all: "As for the poets, the erring follow them" [26, 224]. He said: These are the story-tellers.

And the Prophet said: He, who goes to an innovator (*dhū bid'a*) and gives him respect, strives towards the destruction of Islām. And our belief, concerning him who opposes us in a single injunction of religion, is the like of our belief concerning him who disobeys us in all the injunctions of religion.

## CHAPTER 40

### THE BELIEF CONCERNING THE ANCESTORS OF THE PROPHET

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far: Our belief concerning them is that they were believers (*muslimūn*) from Adam down to 'Abdu'l-lāh, his (Prophet's) father, peace be on him, and that Abū Tālib and the Prophet's mother Āmina bint Wahb were Muslims.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The Urdu translator adds a note that among the ancestors of the Prophet were seven prophets, namely, Adam, Seth, Noah, Elias, Abraham,

And the Prophet, on whom be blessings and peace, said: I am derived from (the bonds of) matrimony and not from any unlawful union (*sifāh*), from Adam downwards.

And it is related that [151] 'Abdu'l-Muṭṭalib, peace be on him, was a *hujjat* and Abū Tālib was his *waṣī*.

### CHAPTER 41

#### THE BELIEF CONCERNING THE ALIDS ('alawiya)

Says the Shaykh Abū Ja'far, the mercy of Allah upon him: Our belief concerning the Alids ('alawiya) is that they are the progeny of the Messenger of Allah, and that devotion to them is obligatory, because it is the requital of his apostleship. Says Allah, Exalted is He: "Say (O Muḥammad, unto mankind): I ask of you no requital therefor, save lovingkindness among kinsfolk" [42, 22].<sup>1</sup> The acceptance of *sadaya*<sup>2</sup> is forbidden

Ishmael and al-Yasa' (Esau ?); and he cites Qur. 26, 217-219 as supporting his own argument. He also cites a verse attributed to Abū Tālib proving that he was a Muslim: "(O people of Quraysh) do you not know that we have found it written down in the earliest book (Torah) that Muḥammad was a prophet". The translator is surprised that despite such clear proof people should hold other views.

Wensinck shows that in the *Fiqh Akbar* II, art. 27 sometimes began with the statement: The parents of the Apostle of Allah died as infidels, and so did Abū Tālib, his uncle, *MC*, 197, n. 1. In the *ḥadīth* the Prophet is reported to have visited Abū Tālib on his death-bed and admonished him to accept Islam. Later however, perhaps on account of Shi'itic influence, this attitude was abandoned, *MC*, 239-240; *KP*, 31, 84. For Abū Tālib, see Donaldson, 15, n. 2.

<sup>1</sup> The Urdu translator in explaining the word *qurba* (kinsfolk) says: It is related in the *Tafsīr Majma' u'l-Bayān* on the authority of Imām Zaynū'l-Ābidīn and others that the expression *qurba* meant the progeny of the Prophet. Similar traditions are also related on the authority of Imām Ja'far as-Šādiq and Imām Muḥammad al-Bāqir. Sa'īd b. Jubayr relates on the authority of 'Abdu'l-lāh b. 'Abbās that when this verse of *mawadda* was revealed several companions of the Prophet asked him who the people towards whom devotion was enjoined. The Prophet replied that it referred to 'Ali and Fātima and their descendants. On *walāya*, see p. 96, n. 6.

<sup>2</sup> The Urdu translator explains that apart from the descendants of Ali and Fātima (*sādāt*), even those who are descendants of Hāshim are forbidden to take *sadqa* (charity) from a non-Hāshimite. And obviously *sādāt* are nobler and more excellent than them.

to them, because it is the dirt contained in the hands of the people. And there is no purification<sup>1</sup> for them (the people) save what they give to their (*sādāt's*) slaves and slave-girls, or to one another. But as for the *khumus*, this is permitted to them in lieu of the *zakāt*, which was forbidden to them.

And our belief concerning those (*sādāt* or *'alawīya*) who act sinfully is that they will be punished doubly, and those who do good acts among them will receive a double reward. They are all equal to one another in view of the Prophet's saying, when he looked at the sons of Abū Tālib, namely 'Ali and Ja'far Tayyār: Our daughters are like our sons, and our sons, like our daughters. Imām Ja'far said: He who disobeys the religion of Allah and befriends His enemies or shows enmity towards His friends, complete dissociation (*barā'a*) from him is obligatory (*wājib*), whoever he may happen to be and to whichever tribe he may happen to belong.

The Prince of Believers told his son Muḥammad ibn al-Hanafiya: Your courtesy, due to innate nobility, is more excellent than mere noble lineage.<sup>2</sup> Imām Ja'far said: My devotion (*walāya*) towards the Prince of Believers is more dear to me than my descent from him. Imām Ja'far was asked concerning the family (*āl*) of the Prophet Muḥammad, and he replied that the family of Muḥammad were (those close relations who were) forbidden to him (the Prophet) in marriage.<sup>3</sup>

And the Glorious and Mighty says: [152] "And verily We sent Noah and Abraham and placed the prophethood and the Scripture among their seed; so among them is he who goeth right but many of them are evil-livers" [57, 26].

Imām Ja'far was asked concerning the saying of Allah the Mighty and Glorious: "And then We gave the Scripture as

؛ لأنها أوسع في أيدي الناس ولا طهارة لهم إلا صدقهم الحُجَّة  
D omits حُجَّة.

<sup>2</sup> Lit. "Your courtesy on account of your nobility is more noble for you than the nobility of (that is, the nobility which you inherit from) your forefathers". Here a distinction is drawn between personal nobility born of one's own sense of courtesy and modesty, and the nobility due to lineage and ancestry. The play upon the word شرف is to be noted.

<sup>3</sup> This is omitted in D.

inheritance unto those of our servants whom We elected. But of them are some who wrong themselves and of them are some who are lukewarm,<sup>1</sup> and of them are some who outstrip (others) through good deeds, by Allah's leave" [35, 29]. He said: By those "who wrong themselves" (*zālim*) are meant those who do not recognize the right of the Imām; and by "the middling" (*muqtaṣid*) are meant those who know his right; and by those "who outstrip (others) by good deeds, by Allah's leave" are meant the Imāms.

Imām Ja'far was asked by his son Ismā'īl: What will be the condition of the sinners among us? He said: "It will not be in accordance with your desires, nor the desires of the People of the Scripture. He who doeth wrong will have the recompense thereof, and will not find against Allah any protecting friend or helper" (4, 122).

Imām Muḥammad al-Bāqir in a lengthy tradition says: There is no relationship between Allah and any one else. Verily the person most liked among men in the sight of Allah is the most God-fearing, and one who acts most obediently to Him. I swear by Allah, no man can approach Allah, the Mighty and Glorious, except through obedience. We possess no immunity from the Fire, and not one of us has an argument which will prevail against Allah. He who is obedient to Allah is a friend to us; and he who is disobedient to Allah is an enemy to us. No one can reach (us) except through piety and good deeds. And Noah said: "My Lord! Lo! My son is of my household! Surely Thy promise is the truth and Thou art the most just of Judges.

"He said: O Noah! Lo! He is not of thy household; lo! he is of evil conduct, so ask not of Me that whereof thou hast no knowledge. I admonish thee lest thou be among the ignorant.

"He said: My Lord! [153] in Thee do I seek refuge (from the sin) that I should ask of Thee that whereof I have no knowledge. Unless Thou forgive me and have mercy on me I shall be among the lost" [11, 47-49].

<sup>1</sup> This expression also means "fair, middling".

And Imām Ja'far as-Ṣādiq was asked concerning the saying of Allah the Mighty and Glorious: "And on the day of Resurrection thou (O Muhammad) seest those who lied concerning Allah with their faces blackened. Is not the house of the scorners in Hell?" [39, 61]. He said: (This refers to him) who claims to be Imām, without being one, even if he were an Alid and a Fatimid.<sup>1</sup> And Imām Ja'far told his companions: There is no difference between you and those who oppose you save "that which is concealed" (*al-mudmar*). He was asked: And what is "that which is concealed"? He said: That which you call absolution (*barā'a*). Now as for him who opposes you and his neighbour (*jār*), seek absolution in respect of him even if he were an Alid and a Fatimid.

And he (Imām Ja'far) spoke to his companions concerning his son 'Abdu'l-lāh: He does not follow (the religion) which you follow, and verily I have nothing to do with him. May Allah the Mighty and Glorious have nothing to do with him.

## CHAPTER 42

### THE BELIEF CONCERNING REPORTS (*akhbār*), DETAILED (*mufaqqira*) AND SUMMARY (*mujmala*)

Says the Shaykh: Our belief concerning the detailed reports is that they take precedence over the summary ones, according to the saying of Imām Ja'far as-Ṣādiq, on whom be peace.<sup>2</sup>

## CHAPTER 43

### THE BELIEF CONCERNING PROHIBITION (*hazr*) AND PERMISSION (*ibāha*)

Says the Shaykh: Our belief concerning this is that unless there is a specific prohibition all things are permitted.

<sup>1</sup> من ذم اهـ امام و ليس بامام قـل و اـنـ كـانـ عـلـيـاـ فـاطـيـاـ، N.

من ذمـ اهـ بـامـامـ قـلـ (sic) وـ اـنـ كـانـ عـلـيـاـ قـالـ وـ اـنـ كـانـ عـلـيـاـ وـ فـاطـيـاـ، D.

<sup>2</sup> These are canons of *hadīth* criticism and hardly to be expected in a creed.

## CHAPTER 44

THE BELIEF CONCERNING THE REPORTS REGARDING  
MEDICINE (*at-tib*)

Says the Shaykh: Our belief as regards the reports handed down about medicine (*at-tib*) is that they are of various kinds. (1) Some of them have reference to the climatic conditions of Mecca and Medina, and are therefore not applicable to other conditions. (2) Some are reports from an expert based on his knowledge of the physical condition of the questioner (patient), not living far from his place, inasmuch as he (the 'ālim) knew the condition of the questioner better than the questioner himself. (3) Some have been wrongfully interpolated in the books by opponents to show up the religion in false colours. [154] (4) And among them are some regarding which the reporter has fallen into an error. (5) And among them are others concerning which something is remembered and something forgotten.

And what is related about honey ('asl), that it is the remedy for all diseases, is correct. Its meaning is that it is a remedy for all diseases due to cold (*bārid*). And what is related concerning purification (after excretion) by cold water, for him who suffers from piles, applies only in the case of a patient whose piles are due to heat (*harāra*). And what is related concerning brinjal (*bādinjān*) as a curative agent, applies surely in the case of a person who eats dates at the time when they are ripening, and not at other times.

And as for the most effective of medicines for diseases, as reported from the Imāms, on whom be peace, they are the verses of the Qur'ān and its chapters and prayers, contained in reports, which are handed down by trustworthy authorities and through reliable channels.

Imām Ja'far said: In times past a physician (*tabīb*) used to be called *mu'ālij* (one who cures). Mūsā b. 'Imrān said: O Lord, from whom does disease originate? He (Allah) said: From Me. Mūsā said: And from whom does medicine come? Allah said: From Me. Mūsā said: And why do the people have the *mu'ālij* (physician)? Allah said: In order to please themselves.

And for this reason the physician is called *tabib*.<sup>1</sup> And the real meaning of *at-tib* is to treat one's self medically (*tadāwā*).

In the niche (*mihrāb*) of David, on whom be peace, a kind of grass used to grow every day, and it used to say: Take me, for verily I shall be useful for such and such a thing. At the end of his life, David saw a grass growing in his *mihrāb* and he said to it: What is thy name? And the grass replied: I am the *kharūbiya*. And David said: The *mihrāb* is ruined. And thereafter nothing would grow in it.

The Prophet, on whom be the peace and blessings of God, said: He whom (the *sūra*) *al-Ham* (*Fātiha*) does not cure, may Allah not cure him.

## CHAPTER 45

### THE BELIEF CONCERNING TWO DIVERGENT TRADITIONS (ON A SINGLE QUESTION)

[155] Says the Shaykh, the mercy of Allah be upon him: Our belief concerning the authentic reports (*akhbār*) related from the Imāms is that they accord with the Book of Allah, being in agreement with its meaning and not divergent from it, because they are the result of inspiration from Allah, Glory be to Him. If they were derived from (someone) other than Allah, they would surely have been divergent.

The outward form of the reports differ only on account of certain reasons. For instance, (in one report) the expiation for *zihār* is laid down as the manumission of a slave; in another report we have the performance of fasts for two consecutive months; and in a third report we have the feeding of sixty destitute persons. Now all these are correct. Fasting is prescribed for him who has no slave to free; and feeding (the poor) is prescribed for him who is unable to fast. It has also been reported that he should give *sadqa* (charity) to the extent that he can, and this applies to him who has not the means to feed (sixty persons).

1 Reading as in N (أَنفَسَهُمْ فَسَيِّدُ الطَّبِيبِ طَبِيبًا بِنَلَكْ ) وَ أَصْلُ الْمُؤْمِنِيَّةِ بِنَلَكْ ( الطَّبِيبُ التَّدَارِيُّ الْجَعْلِيُّ ) ; D omits the words in brackets.

And among (such traditions) are those in which one takes the place of the other. For instance, what has been related regarding the expiation of an oath: “ . . . the feeding of the needy ones with the average of that wherewith ye feed your own folk, or the clothing of them, or the liberation of a slave, and he who findeth not (the wherewithal to do so), he must fast for three days” [5, 91].

Now when three traditions are reported concerning the expiation of an oath—firstly, feeding; secondly, clothing; and thirdly, the manumission of a slave—they are regarded by the ignorant as differing from one another. In fact they are not divergent, but each one of these is alternative to the other.

And among the reports handed down are some which are due to *tagīya*.

It is related on the authority of Sulaym b. Qays al-Hilālī that he said to the Prince of Believers, peace be on him: [156] Verily I have heard from Salmān, Miqdād and Abū Dharr some explanations of the Qur’ān and the traditions of the Prophet different from what are generally known to the people.<sup>1</sup> And I have heard from you a corroboration of what I heard from them. And I know that there are many things current among the people regarding the explanation of the Qur’ān and the traditions of the Prophet, to which you (the Imāms) are opposed, and you assert that all that is false. Is it possible that the people attribute a lie<sup>2</sup> to the Prophet of Allah deliberately, and give explanations according to their own opinions?

(The reporter) says: And ‘Alī, on whom be peace, said: You have asked (a question), so now hearken to its reply. Verily the people at large possess the truth and the falsehood; the abrogating (*nāsikh*) and the abrogated (*mansūkh*) verses; the special and the general; the definite (*muhkam*) and the

<sup>1</sup> Lit. “which are not in the hands of the people”.

<sup>2</sup> Reading with D افتري الناس يكذبون الح ; and not as in N

افتري يكذبون الح

ambiguous (*mutashābih*); the well-remembered (*hifzān*) and the doubtful (*wahmān*). Even in the lifetime of the Prophet, on whom be peace, people attributed to the Prophet things which were not true, until (matters reached such a stage that) he rose to address the people and said: O people, the number of perjurers against me has increased; now he who speaks a falsehood against me intentionally, let him prepare<sup>1</sup> for himself a place in Hell. Thereafter falsehoods were told against him after his death.

All tradition has come to you from one of four sources, and there is not a fifth. (I) (First,) the hypocrite (*munāfiq*) professing the faith, simulating Islām,<sup>2</sup> who does not regard it as a sin, and does not care if he speaks an untruth against the Prophet intentionally. Now if people knew that he was a mendacious hypocrite, they would neither have accepted anything from him, nor would they have considered him truthful. But they said: Here is a man who associated with the Messenger of Allah<sup>3</sup> and who saw and heard him. Therefore they accepted (traditions) from him, not knowing his real attitude. And Allah has given tidings regarding the hypocrites and described them with clarity. For He says, Great is He as a Speaker: [157] "And when thou seest them their figures please thee; and if they speak thou givest ear unto their speech. (They are) as though they were blocks of wood in striped cloaks"<sup>4</sup> [63, 4], They (the hypocrites) then split up in factions after the Prophet,

<sup>1</sup> Reading with N فَيَبْوَسْ ; D err. فَيَبْوَسْ.

<sup>2</sup> Reading with N مَتَصْنَعٌ ; not as in D مَتَصْنَعٌ.

<sup>3</sup> Reading with D صَحْبَ رَسُولِ اللَّهِ صَ.

دوڑ گے۔

<sup>4</sup> خَبَّثَ مَسَنَدَةً is an expression which has been variously explained. Pickthall adds a variant to the above: "propped up blocks of wood", which is more literal. Rodwell has "Like timbers are they leaning against a wall". This verse was revealed in reference to 'Abdu'l-lāh and other hypocrites, who had fine strong bodies and eloquent tongues and sat reclining in the company of the Prophet.

and found favour<sup>1</sup> with the leaders of destruction and inviters towards the Fire, by means of deception and falsehood and calumny. They assigned them offices,<sup>2</sup> enjoyed the wealth of the world through them and bore them (hypocrites) upon the necks of people. For people, generally—save those whom Allah has protected<sup>3</sup>—follow the kings and the worldly path. This is the first of the four types.

(II) (The second is) the man who hears something from the Prophet but does not remember it precisely. He then falls into an error concerning it, without intentionally telling a lie. Now this (tradition) is with him; he professes it, acts according to it, and relates it to others and says: I heard it from the Messenger of Allah. If people knew that this was a mistake, they would not accept it, and if he himself knew that it was an error, he would certainly have cast it off.

(III) The third is the man who hears the Prophet commanding a certain act, which, unknown to him, was later forbidden. Or (he hears the Prophet) forbidding an act, which was later, unknown to him, permitted. Hence he remembers the abrogated, but not the abrogating (command). Now if he knew that it was abrogated, he would surely have rejected it; and similarly if the people knew that what was heard from the relator was an abrogated command, they too would surely have rejected it.

(IV) The fourth is the man who does not give the lie to Allah and His Prophet, because he hates falsehood and fears Allah the Mighty and Glorious, and honours the Messenger of Allah. He does not forget it, but commits to memory precisely what he hears. So he brings forward what he has heard, without any increase or decrease. If he knew the abrogating and the abrogated (command), he would act in accordance with the abrogating and would reject the abrogated (injunction).

<sup>1</sup> Reading with D فَتَقْرِبُوا.

<sup>2</sup> Reading with D الْعَمَالُ; and not as in N الْأَعْمَالُ.

<sup>3</sup> N مَنْ عَصَمَ اللَّهَ; D err. مَنْ عَصَمَ اللَّهَ.

Now the commands of the Prophet, like those of the Qur'ān, are abrogating (*nāsikh*) [158] and abrogated (*mansūkh*), special (*khāṣṣ*) and general (*'ām*), definite (*mūhkam*) and ambiguous (*mutashābih*). And there may be words related from the Prophet bearing two meanings, a general and a particular one, exactly as in the case of the Qur'ān. Allah the Mighty and Glorious says in His Book: "And whatsoever the Messenger giveth you, take it. And whatsoever he forbiddeth, abstain (from it)" [59, 7]. Now what Allah and His Messenger meant<sup>1</sup> remained ambiguous to those who did not know. Not all the Companions of the Prophet questioned or tried to understand him, for among them were those who neither questioned, nor understood him;<sup>2</sup> for Allah forbade them from questioning when He said: "O ye who believe! Ask not of things which, if they were made known to you, would trouble you; but if ye ask of them when the Qur'ān is revealed, they will be made known unto you. Allah pardoneth this, for Allah is Forgiving, Clement. A folk before you asked (for such disclosures) and they disbelieved therein" [5, 101]. So they were forbidden from questioning to such an extent that they were glad if a desert Arab would come and ask, and they would listen.

I ('Ali) used to visit the Messenger of Allah, habitually,<sup>3</sup> every night and every day in strict privacy, when he used to answer me concerning what I asked, and I used to go about him wherever he went. The companions of the Messenger of Allah knew (full well) that he did not act in this manner with anyone else. And this (private conversation) would often take place in my house. And whenever I would visit him at some of his resting-places, he would arrange for being alone with me and ask his wives to leave, so that no one would remain except

<sup>1</sup> ما نهى الله D; ما عني الله N.

<sup>2</sup> Reading with D; لَأَنَّ فِيهِمْ قَوْمًا مَا كَانُوا يَشْلُونَهُ أَخْ N has لَأَنَّ فِيهِمْ قَوْمًا كَانُوا يَشْلُونَهُ أَخْ

<sup>3</sup> Read دُخَلَةً, not as in D دُخَلَةً.

he and I. And when he would come to me in private, he would ask every one to withdraw except Fātima or one of my two sons, and when questioned he would answer me. [159] And when I would remain silent and my questions would be exhausted, he would begin himself. So that nothing was revealed to the Prophet of the verses of the Qur'ān, or taught to him by Allah, Exalted is He, concerning what was lawful and what was forbidden, command or prohibition, obedience or sin, things past or future—but he would teach it to me and make me read it, or dictate it to me and I would write it down in my own hand. He would explain to me its true meaning (*ta'wīl*), and its apparent and hidden significance (*zāhir, bātin*), and I would commit it to memory and would not forget even a letter of it.

Whenever the Messenger of Allah used so to instruct me, he would place his hand on my chest and say: O Lord! Fill his mind (*qalb*) with knowledge, understanding, light, forbearance and belief (*imān*); teach him and do not let him remain ignorant; cause him to remember and not to forget. I said to him one day: May my father and mother be sacrificed for you, O Messenger of Allah! Do you fear forgetfulness (on my part)? And he said: O my brother! I fear neither forgetfulness nor ignorance on your part. Allah the Mighty and Glorious has informed me that he has accepted (my prayers) concerning you ('Alī) and your associates, who will come after you. And I said: O Messenger of Allah, who are my associates? And he said: Those, obedience to whom has been coupled by Allah, with obedience to Himself and obedience to me (Prophet). And I said: Who are they, O Messenger of Allah? And he said: They concerning whom Allah has said: "O ye who believe! Obey Allah and obey the Messenger and those of you who are in authority" [4, 62]. And I said: O Messenger of Allah, who are they? He said: they are the *awṣīyā'* (executors) who will be executors after me. They will not separate until they come to me at my Pond (*hawd*), rightly-guiding and rightly-guided. The deceit of those that deceive will not injure them, nor the desertion of those that desert them.<sup>1</sup> [160] They (the

<sup>1</sup> Reading with N خذلان من خذلهم

Imāms) are with the Qur'ān, and the Qur'ān is with them; they will not forsake it (the Qur'ān) and it will not forsake them. By them (Imāms) will my community (*umma*) be guided, and by them will they be benefitted,<sup>1</sup> and by them will calamity be averted, and through them will their prayers be heard.

And I ('Alī) said: O Messenger of Allah, name them to me. He said: "You, O 'Alī; then this, my son"—and he put his hand on the head of Ḥasan. "And then this, my son",—and he put his hand on the head of Ḥusayn. "Then your namesake, O brother, he is the leader of the devotees; then his son, named Muḥammad, the Opener (*bāqir*) of my knowledge, and the treasurer of the inspiration of Allah. O brother, 'Alī (Zaynu'l-'Ābidīn) will be born in your lifetime, so give my greetings to him. And Muḥammad (al-Bāqir) will be born in your lifetime, O Ḥusayn, so give my greetings to him. And then Ja'far (*as-Sādiq*); then Mūsā (al-Kāzīm) b. Ja'far; then 'Alī (an-Naqī) b. Mūsā; then Muḥammad b. 'Alī; then Ḥasan (az-Zākī) b. 'Alī; then he, whose name is my name and whose colour is my colour,—the upholder of the command of Allah (*al-qā'im bi-amri'l-lāh*) in the final era, the Righteous Guide, WHO WILL FILL THE EARTH WITH JUSTICE AND EQUITY, JUST AS NOW IT IS FULL OF OPPRESSION AND WRONG.<sup>2</sup> I swear by Allah, O Sulaym,<sup>3</sup> that people will swear allegiance to him between the Pillar (*rukn*) and the Place (*magām*),<sup>4</sup> and I know the names of the people who will support him and I know their tribes.<sup>5</sup>

Sulaym b. Qays said: Later on I met Ḥasan and Ḥusayn at Medina after Mu'āwiya began to reign, and I related to them this story from their father. Both of them said: You speak the truth. The Prince of Believers had related this story to you, while we were sitting, and we remembered this from the

<sup>1</sup> Lit. "will receive rain".

<sup>2</sup> N كَمْلَتْ قَبْلَهُ طَلَّمَ وَجَوَرَأْ أَخْ. *BHA*, §211, p. 79. Compare Fyzee, *Ismaili Law of Wills*, 67-68. See p. 98 above.

<sup>3</sup> Kashī, *Rijāl* (Bombay ed.), 68-69.

<sup>4</sup> By *rukn* is meant the Black Stone and *maqām* means the Maqām Ibrāhīm.

<sup>5</sup> Here ends 'Alī's long speech, beg. at p. 119.

Messenger of Allah as you relate it, and not a word has been added or subtracted.<sup>1</sup> [161] And Sulaym b. Qays said: I then met ‘Alī b. al-Husayn (Zaynu'l-‘Ābidīn), on whom be peace, and his son Muhammad al-Bāqir was with him, and I related to him what I had heard from his father, and he ('Alī) said:<sup>2</sup> I heard it from the Prince of Believers, who in turn had it from the Messenger of Allah, while he was ill and I was a boy. Then Abū Ja‘far (Muhammad al-Bāqir) said: And when my grandfather gave me the Prophet's greeting I was a boy.

Abān b. Abī ‘Ayyāsh said: I related the whole of this story, as related by Sulaym b. al-Qays al-Hilālī, to Imām ‘Alī b. al-Husayn, and he said: He (Sulaym) spoke the truth. Jābir b. ‘Abdi'l-lāh al-Anṣārī happened to meet my son, Muhammad al-Bāqir, while he was attending school, and he kissed him and gave him the greeting of the Messenger of Allah.

Abān b. Abī Ayyāsh said: I went to the Ḥajj after the death of Imām ‘Alī b. al-Husayn (Zaynu'l-‘Ābidīn), and I met Imām Muhammad al-Bāqir, and I related to him the whole of this story, as related by Sulaym b. Qays, and his eyes filled with tears<sup>3</sup> and he said: Sulaym, may the mercy of Allah be upon him, spoke the truth. Sulaym had come to my father after my grandfather al-Husayn was slain, and I was present when he related this story exactly in the same manner and my father said to him: By Allah, you have spoken the truth, O Sulaym. My father had related to me this story from the Prince of Believers.

(Says the Shaykh Abū Ja‘far:) In the Book of Allah, the Mighty and Glorious, there are verses which the ignorant will find inconsistent with, and contrary to, one another. But in fact they are not so. For instance, His saying, Exalted is He: "So

<sup>1</sup> D omits مه حرفاً.

<sup>2</sup> Reading with D فَقَالَ سَمِعْتُ عَنْ أَمِيرِ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ عَنْ رَسُولِ اللَّهِ وَهُوَ مَرْبُضٌ لِلْخَيْرِ وَمَا سَمِعْتُ عَنْ أَمِيرِ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ لِلْخَيْرِ N. There is some confusion in N; the dropping of the word فَقَالَ does not make the sense regular.

<sup>3</sup> Reading *fa ighrawraqat*, [أَفْوَعُ عَل] (xii) of غرق.

this day We have forgotten them even as they forgot the meeting of this (their) day" [7, 49]; and His saying: "They forgot Allah, so He hath forgotten them" [9, 68]. Thereafter He says: "And thy Lord is not forgetful" [19, 65].<sup>1</sup>

And similarly His saying: "On the day when the Spirit and the angels will stand arrayed, they speak not, saving him whom the Beneficent alloweth and who speaketh right" <sup>2</sup> [78, 38]. And the like of His saying: "Then on the Day of Resurrection ye will deny each other and curse [162] each other" [29, 24], and His saying: "Lo! that is the very truth: the wrangling of the dwellers in the Fire" [38, 64]. And then He will say: "Contend not in My presence, when I had already proffered unto you the warning" [50, 27]. And His saying, Exalted is He: "This day We seal up their mouths, and their hands shall speak out and their feet shall bear witness as to what they (their possessors) used to earn" [36, 65].

And the like of His saying: "That day will faces be resplendent, looking toward their Lord" [75, 22-23]. Then says the Glorious and Mighty: "The eyes see Him not, but He seeth the eyes.<sup>3</sup> He is the Subtile, the Aware" [6, 103].

And His saying: "And it is not (vouchsafed) to any mortal that Allah should speak to him unless (it be) by revelation or from behind a veil" [42, 50]. And then He says: "And Allah

<sup>1</sup> The Urdu translator explains that in the first two verses, 7, 49 and 9, 68, the meaning of the word نسیان نسیان جزائی, that is "the punishment of forgetfulness" whereas in the last verse, 19, 65, the word means "forgetfulness"—thus there is no inconsistency.

<sup>2</sup> The Urdu translator adds a footnote: In this verse the words لا تكلون, etc. (78, 38) mean this, that no one will intercede except those who are permitted by Allah; and the words ثم يوم القيامة, etc. (29, 24) mean that some will describe others as unbelievers and curse them. Therefore the inconsistency appears to be that in one verse there is prohibition of speaking, whilst in the other, permission to do so is patent. Now in reality this is not so. From the first verse it is clear that generally every one is not allowed to intercede; and from the second it appears that people who are consigned to Hell will speak ill of one another. Hence there is no inconsistency in the two verses.

<sup>3</sup> So Lane, which I have adopted; and not Pickthall, who has: Vision comprehendeth Him not, but He comprehendeth (all) vision.

spoke directly unto Moses" [4, 162]; and He says: "And their Lord called them, (saying): Did I not forbid you from that tree . . ." [7, 21].

And the like of His saying, Exalted is He: "And not an atom's weight in the earth or in the sky escapeth your Lord, nor what is less than that or greater than that, but it is (written) in a clear book" [10, 62]. And then He says: "(And Allah) will not look upon them on the Day of Resurrection, nor will He assoil<sup>1</sup> them" [3, 71]. And then He says: "Nay, but surely on that day they will be precluded<sup>2</sup> from (the mercy of) their Lord" [83, 15].

And the like of His saying: "Have ye taken security from Him Who is in the Heaven that He will not cause the earth to swallow you when lo! it is convulsed" [67, 16]. And His saying: "The Beneficent One, Who is established on the Throne" [20, 4]. Then He says: "He is Allah in the heavens and the earth. He knoweth both your secret and your utterance, and He knoweth what ye earn" [6, 3]. And He says: "There is no secret conference of three but He is their fourth, nor of five but He is their sixth, nor of less than that or more, but He is with them wheresoever they may be" [58, 8].

And He says, Exalted is He: "We are nearer to him [163] than his jugular vein" [50, 15]. And Allah says: "Wait they, indeed, for nothing less than that the angels should come, or that there should come one of the portents from thy Lord!" [6, 159]. And the like of His saying: "Say: the angel of death, who hath charge concerning you, will gather you" [32, 11]. And then He says: "Our messengers (i.e. angels) receive him and they neglect not" [6, 61],<sup>3</sup> and He says: "Those whom the angels cause to die . . ." [16, 30 and 34]; and says Allah, Exalted is He: "Allah receiveth (men's) souls at the time of their death" [39, 43].

<sup>1</sup> So Rodwell. Pickthall has: make them grow.

<sup>2</sup> Lit. "covered from" (Pickthall) or "shut out as by a veil" (Rodwell), which is even more literal.

<sup>3</sup> This means that the angels, ordered to take the life of a man, carry out their instructions without fail.

And the likes of these verses abound in the Qur'ān, concerning which one of the Zindīqs<sup>1</sup> asked the Prince of Believers, on whom be peace and blessings, and he explained the consistency of their significations and elucidated to him their real meaning (*ta'wīl*).<sup>2</sup>

I have extracted the tradition (*khabar*) concerning this, supporting it by a commentary, in the *Kitābu't-Tawhīd*,<sup>2</sup> and I shall write a book specially concerning it by His Will and Help, Exalted is He.

<sup>1</sup> *Zindīq* is a very interesting word; it may generally be rendered as a "dangerous heretic". Its derivation from Aram. *saddīq*, "friend", as proposed by Prof. A. A. Bevan (Browne, *Lit. His. Per.* i. 159-160; Nicholson, *Lit. His. Arabia*, 375, n. 2) is apparently not accepted by modern scholars like Prof. L. Massignon, s.v. *Zindīq*, *EI*, iv. 1228.

<sup>2</sup> See *Tawhīd*, p. 114 sqq.

## INDEXES

### A. QUR'ĀNIC VERSES

*The references are to Fluegel's edition.*

<i>Verse</i>		<i>Page</i>	<i>Verse</i>		<i>Page</i>
1, 4	..	103	6, 3	..	127
2, 14	..	29	6, 61	..	70
2, 23	..	78n	do.	..	127
2, 28-31	..	90	6, 95	..	59
2, 53	..	63	6, 103	..	26
2, 149	..	50	do.	..	126
2, 181	..	34	6, 107	..	34
2, 206	..	28	6, 108	..	110
2, 244	..	62	6, 112	..	34
2, 256	..	26	6, 125	..	34
do.	..	45	6, 159	..	127
2, 261	..	63	7, 5	..	75
2, 273	..	106	7, 21	..	127
3, 26	..	59	7, 44	..	71
3, 27	..	29	7, 49	..	126
do.	..	111	7, 54	..	60
3, 47	..	29	7, 171	..	94
3, 48	..	65	7, 171-173	..	94n
3, 55	..	84	7, 175	..	50
3, 71	..	127	8, 16	..	37
3, 73	..	101	8, 25	..	106
3, 74	..	101	9, 23	..	106
3, 79	..	103	9, 26	..	99
3, 139	..	34	9, 33	..	98
3, 148	..	34	9, 68	..	29
3, 163-164	..	50	do.	..	126
3, 170	..	34	9, 80	..	29
3, 184	..	87	9, 116	..	39
3, 189	..	106	10, 32	..	59
4, 32	..	34 (twice)	10, 62	..	127
4, 45	..	75	10, 99	..	33
4, 51	..	69	10, 100	..	33
4, 122	..	115	11, 20	..	75
4, 131	..	34	11, 21-22	..	106
4, 141	..	29	11, 47-49	..	115
4, 156	..	103n	11, 115	..	107
4, 162	..	127	13, 17	..	104
4, 169	..	101	13, 35	..	78n
4, 170	..	91 (twice)	13, 39	..	41
5, 56	..	107	15, 29	..	27
5, 69	..	28	16, 30	..	127
5, 77	..	33	16, 34	..	127
5, 81	..	101	16, 40	..	65
5, 91	..	119	16, 41	..	65
5, 101	..	122	17, 15	..	76
5, 110	..	63n	17, 76-77	..	88
5, 116	..	29	17, 87	..	52
5, 176	..	106	18, 17	..	64

<i>Verse</i>	<i>Page</i>	<i>Verse</i>	<i>Page</i>
18, 24	..	64	41, 46
18, 28	..	80	42, 22
18, 45	..	65	do.
19, 15	..	52	42, 50
19, 34	..	52	43, 77
19, 65	..	126	44, 43
19, 72	..	71	44, 54
20, 4	..	46	46, 34
do.	..	127	48, 2
20, 83	..	28	48, 28
do.	..	51	49, 13
20, 113	..	84	50, 15
21, 27	..	96	50, 27
21, 48	..	75	50, 39
21, 69	..	35	51, 47
21, 73	..	106	52, 20
21, 105	..	44n	53, 43
23, 10-11	..	82	54, 54-55
23, 14	..	52	55, 26-27
23, 109	..	80	55, 29
23, 110	..	80	56, 52
26, 217-219	..	113n	56, 93
26, 224	..	112	57, 26
27, 85	..	65	58, 8
27, 91	..	79	58, 22
28, 41-42	..	106	59, 7
28, 56	..	33	do.
28, 88	..	27	59, 19
29, 24	..	126	60, 8-9
30, 18	..	59	60, 13
30, 39	..	38, 39	61, 9
31, 27	..	66	63, 4
32, 11	..	127	67, 16
32, 13	..	34	68, 43
32, 24	..	106	70, 4
33, 33	..	96	71, 23
35, 29	..	114-115	71, 27-28
36, 52	..	64	75, 16-19
36, 55-56	..	78n	75, 22-23
36, 65	..	126	do.
37, 24	..	73	76, 3
37, 60	..	80n	76, 30
37, 62-63	..	80n	78, 24-26
38, 16	..	28	78, 38
38, 64	..	126	81, 29
38, 75	..	28	82, 10-12
39, 43	..	127	83, 15
39, 57	..	27 (twice)	do.
39, 61	..	116	86, 13-14
39, 65	..	88	do.
39, 67	..	28 (twice)	88, 25-26
40, 11	..	61	89, 13
40, 33	..	34	89, 23
41, 16	..	39	90, 10
41, 21-22	..	77	91, 8
41, 42	..	84	101, 6-8
41, 46	..	68-69	..

## B. SUBJECTS

*N.B.—The references are to pages throughout. Heavy type indicates importance.*

Abrogation, of previous faiths, 42  
'Abdu'l-lāh (the Prophet's father), a Muslim, 112  
Absolution (*barā'a*) necessary in respect of idols, 109  
Abū Tālib, a Muslim, 113n  
Actions, are created; meaning of *khalq tagdīr* and —*takwīn*, 32  
Adam, the Garden of, was a garden of this world, 81; —superior to angels, 90  
Alchemy, 115  
'Alī b. Abī Tālib describes three stages of person dying, 53; leader of Muslims, 89; —and the Prophet, create the world (doctrine of delegation), 104; his rights, 106; deniers of his claim are deniers of Muhammad, 107; prophecy as to being wronged, 107; he who fought 'Alī is an unbeliever, 108; the First Imām, 108; suffered from ophthalmia (*ramad*), 108; always wronged, 108; his long speech, 119-124; visited the Prophet habitually in private, 122  
'Alī ar-Riḍā' (VIII Imām) against the extremists in belief, 103  
Alids, 113-116  
devotion (*walāya*) to them obligatory, 113; not to accept charity, 113-114; equality *inter se*, 114; *khumus* permitted, 114; rewarded and punished doubly, 114; *zakāt* permitted, 114; false claim to Imāmat, 116  
Allah, attributes, 25, 26; essence, body, form, accident, 26; length, breadth, weight, lightness, quiescence, motion, place, time, 26; transcendence, immanence, 26; neither begets nor begotten, 26; no associate, equal, rival or consort, 26; cannot be seen or compassed by thought of man, 26; does not sleep, 26; no deity other than Him, 26; His authority and power of creation, 26;

not comparable to creatures, 27; Qur'ānic verses explained, 27-28; beguiling, mockery, forgetfulness, deriding, 29; attributes of Essence and Action, distinguished, 30n, 30-31; Intention (*irāda*) and Will (*maslī'a*), 33-35; His Guidance, man given choice, based on reasons, 39; explains to Moses command and prohibition, 41; equally related to all creatures, 46; will not tolerate wrongdoing, 74; created creation for Prophet and Imāms, 95; "Most High Name", 105; shows no favouritism, 115; loves the God-fearing, 115

Ancestors, of Md., all Muslims, 112; generally, 112-113

Angels, support the Throne and ask for daily bread for Allah's creatures, 47; sanctify and glorify God, 78; —prophets and Imāms, 89-92; their excellence and rank, 89-90; envy Adam, 90; prostration before Adam proves their inferiority, 90; guard God's creatures, 91; created out of light and spirit, 91; their nature, 91n; have great desire for knowledge, 91; obedient to God, *ibid.*; are spiritual and sinless beings, *ibid.*; infallible, 99

Anthropomorphism, 46n

Arb., *awl*: of, "1".

Apostles (*rusul*) possess five spirits, 52; generally, 89-92; more excellent than angels, 89; apostle and prophet, distinction, 92; infallible, 99

Apostle (*rasūl*), see Prophet (*Nabī*). 'Arsh, carried by whole creation, or knowledge, 46; fourth created thing, 46n; Mufid modifies Ṣadūq's doctrine, 47n; graphic description, 48n; as the Universal Body or Muḥammad's *logos*, 48n

Atoms, the world of, 94n

*Barā'a* (see Absolution), necessary part of *īmān*, 109

Beasts and unbelievers have three spirits, 53

Belief, true, consists of love of *Imāms*, 96

Believers, possess four spirits, 52; shown their places in Paradise and Hell, 81

Book, man to be confronted with —of actions, 78

“The Four Books”, 5, 6

“The Three Books”, 6n

Bridge, 71-72; passes on—, 73

Capacity (*istiqā'a*), 40-41; human, requisites, 40; illustration of fornicator, 40; free will and predestination, 41n

Caves, Companions of, 64

Chair (*kursī*) is knowledge, 45; a receptacle, contains the Throne, heavens, the earth and all creation, 45

Charms (*ruqqa*), part of Allah's Decree, 37

Christians, 91, 101, 103, 104

Cognition (*ma'rifa*) of Prophets, 95

Communities, best are followers of Prophet and *Imāms*, and worst are their enemies, 89

Constraint (*jabr*), 32

Contention (*mirā'i*), 43-44

Controversy (as distinguished from contention), against opponents, permitted to the learned, 43; reference to *Imām*, 44; not permitted to the ignorant, 44; to be carried on by arguments of *Imāms*, 44

Covenant of Adam and his descendants, 94n

Created things, order of, 46n; first, souls and spirits, 49

Creator, equally related to creatures, 46

Creation, source of, 41; Allah does not repent after creating, 42; Allah's knowledge, 42; from nothing, 49n; *khalq* dis. from *ibdā'*, 49n

Creatures, relation to Creator, 46

Creeds, Sunnite and Shi'ite, comparison, 2

*Da'i'īmu'l-Islām*, attributed to *Ṣadūq*, 22, 23

Death, 53-60; a kind of sleep, 55; a *hammām*, 58, 59; man dies twice, 61

Delegation, on human beings, not complete, 32; *tafwīd*, 32; doctrine of, 104

Destiny (*qadā'*) and Decree (*qadar*), 36-37; a great secret, 36; discussion prohibited, 36

Disbelief (*kufr*), hatred for *Imāms*, 98; excess in belief and delegation, 100; denial of *'iṣma* constitutes, 100

Disputation, vain (*jadal*), 43-44; leads to heresy, 43; distinguished from search after knowledge, 43n

Dissimulation (see *taqīya*), 112; recommended, 112

Earth (see world).

Equality of Allah to creatures, 46

Evildoers (*zālimūn*), 105-110; dissociation from, obligatory, 105-106

Excess in Belief and Delegation, 100-105

Exodus, 62

Expiation for *zīhār*, 118; of oath, three traditions, 118

Ezra, asks God to give life to ruined city, 63

Falsehood (see Truth), 44

Fatīma, most excellent of women, 108-109; her rights usurped, 108; Prophet's love for, 109

*Fitrā*, meanings, 39

Fire, see Hell.

Fire-worshippers, 101

Gabriel, last intermediary between God and Prophets, 83; used to sit before the Prophet like a slave, 83; inferior to the Prophet, 90

Garden, see Paradise.

God, see Allah.

Grace (Allah's), 70; no one enters Paradise without Allah's, 76

Guidance (*hidāya*), 38, 39

Heaven, Hell, have stages, 50

Hell, 77-82; created, 81; custodian, 80-81; master (keeper) of, refuses

to kill inmates, 80; residents to suffer torment without dying, 80; place of degradation and revenge, 79; enemies of Prophet and Imāms will inhabit, 89; after a time monotheists will escape, 79; polytheists to remain permanently, 79; inhabitants reside for ever, but some will be saved, 81, 82n; Prophet saw it at the time of Ascension, 81

Heretic (*zindiq*), one who contends and disputes about Allah, 43; 101

Honey, properties, 117

Husayn b. 'Ali (Imām), did Allah intend his murder? 34; murder discussed, 34-35; complete composure at Kerbela, 54, 55

Ibn Bābawayhi, 6, 7; meaning of name, 8n; birth, 9; family and character, 10; taught at Bagh-dad, 10; controversies for Ruknū'd-Dawla, 10; works, 11; list of known works, 12-17; unknown works, 17-23

Idols, absolution necessary, 109

Imām, Hidden, 9, 98

Imām I, 'Ali, 95, 101

Imām II, Hasan, 95, 102

Imām III, Husayn, 95, 102

Imām IV, 'Ali b. Husayn, Zaynu'l-'Abidin, 95, 102

Imām V, Muḥammad al-Bāqir, 95, 102

Imām VI, Ja'far as-Ṣādiq, 95, 102

Imām VII, Muṣā al-Kāzīm, 95, 102

Imām VIII, 'Ali ar-Ridā', 95, 102

Imām IX, Muḥammad at-Taqī, 95, 102

Imām X, 'Ali an-Naqī, 95, 102

Imām XI, Hasan al-'Askari, 95, 102

Imām XII, Muḥammad al-Qā'im, 95, 96; 98; will bring justice to the world, 98, 124; will propagate true religion, 98; characteristics, 99n; more excellent than others, 99n; see Qā'im.

Imāms, possess five spirits, 52; enemies are most wicked of all communities; —, prophets and angels, 89-92; more excellent than angels, 89, 92; —and Muḥammad, most excellent of creatures, 94; "Proofs" of God for the people; the Twelve, 95; to be obeyed, 96; are witnesses for the people, gates of Allah, roads to Allah, guides to Allah, repositories of Allah's knowledge and interpreters of revelation, *ibid.*; are sinless and without error (*khaṭā', zalal*), *ibid.*; power of miracles and arguments, *ibid.*; sanctity of commands and prohibitions, *ibid.*; obedience and disobedience to, *ibid.* 123; friends and enemies, 96; may either be manifest or hidden, 97-98; their death, 102; all martyrs, 103; deny excessive belief and delegation, 104; are "ways to God", 106; none is to be denied, 108; are twelve in number, 108; killers of, are unbelievers, 109; divergent traditions from, 118; guides to the community, 124

Imāmat, denial of, amounts to denial of apostleship of all prophets, 107

Incarnation (*hulūl*), 65n, 105; (*intibā'*), 105

Inconsistencies in the Qur'ān, only apparent, 125 sqq.

Infallibility, 99-100; prophets, Imāms, apostles and angels, infallible, 99-100; involves immunity from sin, 100

Innovators, 112

Intercession, 67, 68; where repentance not necessary, 67; by Prophets, Imāms and believers, 68; on behalf of 30,000, 68

Ismā'il b. Ja'far, peculiar position, 42

Ismailism, 1, 6

Isrāfil, inferior to Adam, 91

Ithnā 'Ashariya, 1, 5, 6

Imām Ja'far as-Ṣādiq, explains unbeliever's joy and believer's pain at death, 56; forbids open reviling of enemies, 110; advises *taqīya* and diplomacy, 111-112

Jesus, will pray behind Mahdi, 65, 98; superior to angels, 91

Jews, beliefs regarding creation, 41-42; 101

Justice, Allah's, 70-71; salvation depends upon grace, 70

*Kahf*, see Cave.

Kharrijites, 101  
*Khumus*, permitted to Alids, 114  
*al-Kutubu'l-arba'a*, see "The Four Books".

Mahdi, will lead Jesus and others in prayer, 65; the twelfth Imām, 98

Man, created for accepting *tawhīd*, 38; three most trying moments, 51

Manifestation, see *tajallī*.

Medicine, 117-118; five kinds of reports, 117; cold and heat, 117; Qur'ān, the most effective, 117; why physician is called *tabib*, 117-118; best is *al-hamad* (*Fātiha*), 118

Messiah, superior to angels, 91

Metempsychosis (*tanāsukh*), 105n

Michael (the Angel), inferior to the Prophet, 90

Miracles, Imāms possess powers, 96

**Muhammad, the Prophet, *rūh*** accompanies, 53; story of burial of 'Ali's mother, Fātima bint Asad, 60-61; Allah bestowed on him knowledge in its totality, 84; sinlessness explained, 88n; most excellent of prophets, 89, 93; superior to all angels, 91, 92; superior to Gabriel, Michael and Isrāfīl, 90-91; best of mankind and their leader, 91; gives instruction to *wāsi*, 93; enemies will suffer agony, 94; followers of his "light", 94; —and Imāms, most excellent of creatures, 94; their excellence due to acceptance of God at time of *mithāq*, 94; sent with message to other Prophets, 94; precedence due to greater power of cognition (*ma'rifa*), 95; poisoned, 101; a martyr, 103; —and 'Ali create the world, according to the doctrine of delegation, 104; on denial of 'Ali's right, 106; successor of, 107; murderers of, are unbelievers, 109; his family (*ālī*), 114; attacks perjurors against himself, 120; meetings and discussions with 'Ali, 122-123; prayer for 'Ali, 123

Night of Power, 83, 84

Nobility, and courtesy, 114

*Nubuwwa* and *wilāya* compared, 97n

Ophthalmnia (*ramad*), 108

Original Nature (of man) (*fitra*), 38, 39

"Orthodoxy" and "heterodoxy", 3

Paradise, 77-82; no one enters except by God's Grace, 76; described, 78-79; permanency, 78; the "Garden of Eternity" must be distinguished from the Garden of Adam, 81: the Prophet saw it at the time of Ascension, 81; created, 81; inhabitants reside eternally, 81; leaders are prophets and Imāms, 89

Passes (Mountain-), 72-74; progress from one to another, 73; are on the Bridge, 73

Pen (*galam*), an angel, 44

People of the House, 57

The Perfect Man, 48n

Pledge, mankind's to God, 94, 94n

Plotinus, First Intellect is like *mashī'a*, 33

Pond (*hawd*), 'Ali will be the giver of drinks, 66; generally, 66-67

Prohibition, unless prohibited all things permitted, 116; and permission, 116

Promise (*wa'd*), 68

Prophet (*nabi*), see Apostle (*rasūl*).

Prophets possess five spirits, 52; —Imāms and Angels, 89-92; are more excellent than angels, 89; their number, 92; —and Imāms, commands are commands of God, 93; the Great Five—Noah, Abraham, Moses, Jesus and Muhammad, 93; given knowledge according to their cognition (*ma'rifa*), 95; infallible, 99

Proofs, see Imāms, 72, 73

Proverb, mentioning one person and meaning another, explained, 88n

Purgatory, 71; a wall between Paradise and Hell, 71

Qadarites, 101

**Qā'im**, is master of time, vicegerent of God and invisible to the eyes, 95-96; the proof of Allah, *khalifa* of God, the Ex-

pected One, 98; may or may not live in occultation, 98; 108; see *Imām* (twelfth).

Questioning in the Grave, 60, 61; various stages, 72-74; forbidden, 122

*Qur'ān*, see *Revelation* and *Night of Power*; revealed in one lot on *Night of Power* at *Baytu'l-Ma'mūr*, 83; revealed from *Baytu'l-Ma'mūr* to the Prophet in 20 years, 83; created or uncreated, 84n, 85; is *kalām* (word) of Allah, 84, 85; is created according to *Ṣadūq*, 85; extent of, 85-89; not greater in extent than *textus receptus*, 85; omissions in, 85n; not to be read in a single night, nor in less than three days, 86; all revelations not embodied in it, 86; integrity of, 87; vicarious liability in some verses, 88; difference in readings, 87; divergent explanations, 119; inconsistencies explained, 125 sqq.

*Reckoning and Scales*, 74-77; by Allah, Prophet and *Imāms*, 74; who are exempt, 75; every one to be punished after, 76; mankind will be confronted with a book, 76; Allah will finish it in half-an-hour, 76; Allah will give results of, in one speech, 76; *Shi'a* not to be questioned, 76n; limbs to testify, 76-77

Recording angels, 69-70; good and bad acts, 69; record minute acts as well, 69; for day and night, 70

Reincarnation, 66n

Repentance, 67; 68; gate of, 96

Reports, detailed and summary, 116; detailed take precedence of summary, 116

Responsibility (*taklīf*), of human beings, 31-32; proportionate to capacity, 31

Resurrection (*raj'a*), Allah's questioning on, 36; 62; 65; Prophet Jeremiah asks God to revivify dead persons, 62

Return after death (*ba'th*), 66

Revelation, descent of, 82, 83; rôles of *Isrāfil*, Michael and Gabriel, 82-83; the Prophet's fainting fit, 83; not all in the *Qur'ān*, 86; *Sabaeans* worship angels, 91

Saint (*walī*), when superior to prophet, 105

Salvation, depends upon grace, 70

Scales (see *Reckoning*); are prophets and *awṣiyā'*, 75

Shadows, world of, 51

*Shafā'a* (intercession) obtained on account of approved religion, 67

*Shi'a*, best of communities, 89

*Shi'ism*, a corruption (?), 3

Sins, questioning about, 75; great and small, 100

Sinlessness, see *Infallibility*, 'iṣma, *ma'sūm*.

Souls, spirits, 48-53—

*Nafs* (soul) represents the animal life, 48n; first of created things, 49; compelled to affirm the unity of Allah, 49; immortal, 49; five kinds, 49n; immortality of, Mufid's objection, 49n-50n; return to their bodies, 50; collected like armed forces, 50; two groups, united and disunited, 50; fraternize in the "world of shadows", 51; after death make enquiries, 51

*Rūh* (spirit) represents the rational principle, 48n; five, in prophets, apostles and *Imāms*, 52; four, in believers, 52; unbelievers and beasts possess three spirits, 53; "The Spirit", greater than Gabriel and Michael, 53

Story-tellers, cursed by *Imām Ja'far*, 112

Sūras of *Qur'ān*, number of, 85; SS. 93 and 94 constitute one, 85; SS. 105 and 106 constitute one, 85

Tablet (*lawh*), an angel, 44; and Pen, Mufid's objection to *Ṣadūq's* doctrine, 44n; various descriptions, 45n

*Tagiyya*, obligatory until appearance of the *Qā'im*, 111; scrupulous adherence is great piety, 111; see Dissimulation.

*Tawhīd*, 25; 26-30

Threat (*wa'īd*), 68

Throne ('arsh), 46-48; and chair (*kursī*), described, 46n; supported by eight angels, 47; borne by eight

prophets, 47; bearers described, 47-48; 87

Traditions, divergent, 118-128; differ in outward form only, 118; divergent owing to *taqiya*, 118; the four sources of, 120-121; (1) the hypocrites, 120; (2) the forgetful, 121; (3) abrogated commands remembered, 121; (4) correct report, 121; different kinds, 122; may have two meanings, 122

Transmigration, 65, 65n

Truth, speaking in defence, better than silence regarding falsehood, 44

Unbelievers and beasts have three spirits, 53; friendship with unbeliever possible only under *taqiya*, 111

*Visio beatifica*, 79

*Walāya*, a pass, 73; defined and explained, 96, 96n; to Alids, obligatory, 113

*Wālī* (saint), sometimes higher than prophets, 105

*Wāṣī* (*awṣīyā*), most excellent is 'Alī, 89; their number and qualities, 92-99

*Wāṣīya* of 'Alī, 97n

*Wilāya* (as a rank), superior to *nubuwā*, 97n

Will, Creative (*irāda*), 33; involves knowledge, 33

Witnesses, Allah, 74; prophets, 74;

Imāms, 75

Women, noblest of, is Fāṭima, 108-109, 109n

World and its inhabitants, parable of ocean, sailor and ship, 51; must always have a proof of God, 97

World of Shadows, 51; of Ants, 94n; of atoms, 94-95

Worship, three kinds, 79

Wrongdoers, see Evildoers.

*Zakāt*, taking, permitted to Alids, 114

*Zihār*, three kinds of expiation, 118

*Zindiqs*, 128

### C. NAMES AND TITLES

**Abān** b. Abī 'Ayyāsh, 125  
**'Abdu'l-lāh** (the Prophet's father), 112  
 — b. 'Abbās, 113n  
 — b. Imām Ja'far, 116  
 — b. Sabā', 104  
**'Abdu'l-Muṭṭalib**, 113  
**'Abdu'r-Rahmān** b. Mu'ljam al-Murādī, 101  
 Abraham, 35, 47, 48, 93, 112n, 114  
**Abū Dharr al-Ghifārī**, 46n, 59, 119  
**Abū'l-Hudhayl al-Allāf**, 44  
**Abū Tālib**, 61, 112, 113, 114  
 Adam, 90, 94n, 112, 112n, 113  
 Aden, 66n  
 Ahlwardt, W., 9  
**'A'isha**, 109n  
*'Alam al-Hodā's Notes on Shy'ah Biography*, 7  
*A'lāmu'n-Nuburwa* (Rāzī), 93n  
**'Alī** b. Abī Tālib, 4, 36, 37, 43, 47, 48, 53, 55, 69, 70, 72, 73, 75, 87, 89, 93n, 101, 106, 110, 111, 113n, 114, 119, 124, 125, 128  
 — b. Ahmad b. al-'Abbās an-Najāshī, 11  
 — b. al-Husayn b. Bābawayhi al-Qummi, see Ibn Bābawayhi.  
 — b. Ibrāhīm, 83n  
 — b. Ja'far al-Aswad, 9, 10  
 — an-Naqī, 10th Imām, 102, 127  
 — al-Qārī, 79n  
 — ar-Ridā', 8th Imām, 57, 58, 68n, 76, 102, 103  
 — **Zaynu'l-'Abidīn**, 4th Imām, 55, 102, 113, 124, 125  
 — Asghar b. 'Alī Akbar, 4  
**'Allāma-i-Hillī**, 4, 5  
*(Kitābu'l-Amālī)* (or *Majālisī*), 13 (Works, No. 3)  
*Amalū'l-Āmil* (al-Hurr al-Āmilī), 6n, 7  
 Amāna (a pass), 74  
 Āmina bint Wahb (Prophet's mother), 112  
*'Aqā'idu'sh-Shī'a*, 4  
 Āqīl, 108  
 Ārāf, 71  
 Ark (of Noah), 96  
 Āṣafīya Library, 5  
 Āyla, 66  
 Bāb, Bābawayhi, 8n  
*al-Bābu'l-Hādī 'Ashar* ('Allāma-i-Hillī), 4, 5, 6  
 Baghdad, 10, 11  
 Baghdādī, 3  
 Bānī Isrā'il, 63  
**Bihāru'l-Anwār** (Majlisī), 6n, 10  
 Bombay, 12  
 Brockelmann, C., 10  
 Baydāwī, 75n  
 Bevan, A. A., 77n  
 Browne, E. G., 1, 4, 6, 7, 8, 10  
*Da'ā'imul-Islām* (Nu'mān), 22-23, 61, 97n, 110n  
 Daudpota, U. M., 75n  
 David, 118  
 Ditch, see Khandaq, 86  
*Dhikr Majlis al-ladhi jarā bayna yaday Ruknu'd-dawla*, 15 (No. 12)  
 Donaldson, D. M., 5, 8, 9  
 Elias, 112n  
 Esau, 113  
 Ezra, 63  
**Fatīma** bint Muhammad (the Prophet), 87, 108, 113n  
 Fatimids, 116, 123  
**Fatīma** bint Asad (mother of 'Alī), 60  
*Fihrist* (Tūsi), 7, 9n  
*Firāqū'sh-Shī'a* (Nawbakhtī), 5  
 Friedlaender, Isr., 1, 3  
 Gabriel, 53, 83, 86, 87, 90  
 Ghārī, 101  
 Ghazālī, 75n  
 Hallāj, 33n  
 Hallājites, 105  
*Haqqū'l-Yaqīn* (Majlisī), 1  
 Hārūnū'r-Rashid, 102  
**Hasan** b. 'Alī (2nd Imām), 47, 48, 54, 102, 108, 124  
**Hasan al-'Askarī** (11th Imām), 59, 102, 124  
**Hasan** b. 'Alī, see Ibn Bābawayhi.  
**Hasan** b. Yūsuf b. 'Alī b. Yūsuf b. 'Alī al-Muṭahhar al-Hillī, 'Allāma-i Hillī, 4  
 Hāshimites, 113n  
*Hayātu'l-Qulūb* (Majlisī), 5, 97n  
*(Kitābu'l-)Hidāya*, 17 (No. 18), 99

Hidāyat Ḥusain, M., 8  
 Ḥishām b. al-Ḥakam, 44  
 Horn, P., 8  
 Hubal, 109, 109n  
 Ḥusayn b. 'Alī (3rd Imām), 34-35, 47, 48, 54, 102, 108, 124  
 Ḥusayn b. 'Alī, see Ibn Bābawayhi.  
 (Abū'l-Qāsim) Ḥusayn b. Rūh, 9, 10  
 Ḥusayn b. 'Ubaydū'l-lāh, 11

Ibn 'Abbās, 106  
 Ibnu'l-'Arabī, 6, 43n, 45, 93n, 94n  
**Ibn Bābawayhi**  
 'Alī b. Ḥusayn b. Mūsā Ibn Bābawayhi al-Qummī, 9, 10  
 Hasan b. 'Alī, 10  
 (Abū 'Abdi'l-lāh) Ḥusayn b. 'Alī, 9, 10  
 (Abū Ja'far) Muḥammad b. 'Alī, b. Ḥusayn b. Mūsā al-Qummī, Shaykh Ṣadūq, 5-10

Ibn Hazm, 3  
 Ibn Ṭā'ūs, 10  
 Ibrāhim b. Walid, 102  
 (*Rasā'il Ikhwāniyya-Safā'*, 78n)  
 Ikmālu'd-dīn, 13 (No. 2)  
 al-'Ilal ghayr mubawwab, 14 (No. 10)  
 'Ilalūsh-Sharā'i, 14 (No. 9)  
 (Sayyid-nā) Imādu'd-dīn Idris b. Hasan, 64n, 97n  
 'Iqābu'l-A'māl, 14 (No. 8)  
 'Irāq, 9  
 Ishmael, 113n  
 Ismā'il b. Ja'far (Imām of Ismailis), 42, 115  
 Isrāfil, 82, 82n, 83, 91  
 Israel, 62  
*Istibṣār* (Tūsī), 6  
*Risālatu'l-I'tiqādāt*, 5, 12-13  
 Ivanow, W., 1, 4, 6, 8, 31, 38n

Jābir b. 'Abdi'l-lāh al-Anṣārī, 125  
 Ja'da bint Ash'ath (of Kinda), 102  
 (Abū'l-Hasan) Ja'far b. Hasan b. Khaska al-Qummī, 11  
 Ja'far as-Ṣādīq (6th Imām), 31, 32, 33, 36, 37, 38n, 39, 40, 42, 43, 44, 45, 50, 51, 55, 59, 74n, 75, 79, 87, 88n, 102, 104, 108, 110, 110n, 111, 112, 113n, 114, 115, 116, 117, 124  
 Ja'far Tayyār, 114  
*Jawāhiru'l-Usūl*, 79n  
 Jeffery, A., 40n, 50n, 71n, 77n, 80n  
 Jeremiah, 62, 63

Jesus, 47, 48, 50, 52, 63, 64, 65, 93, 98  
 John (Yahyā), 51  
 Joseph, 40  
 Justi, F., 8

Ka'ba, 83n  
*Kāfi* (Kulaynī), 6  
*Kalāmī Pīr*, 6  
*Kashfū'l-Hujub wa'l-Astār* (Kantūrī), 6, 9  
 Kawthar, 67  
 Kazimirski, M. A. de Biberstein, 1  
 Khadija (Prophet's wife), 109  
 Khandaq, Battle of, 86  
 Khaybar, 101  
*Khiṣāl*, 14 (No. 6)  
 Khorasan, 9  
 Kraus, P., 1  
 Kūfa, 101n  
 Kulaynī, Md. b. Ya'qūb, 6

al-Lāt, 109  
 Levy, R., 36, 38  
 Luqmān, 51

*Ma'ānī'l-Akhbār*, 15 (No. 13)  
 Mahdi, 65  
 Majlisī, Md. Bāqiri, 1, 5, 6n, 10, 38, 97n  
*Majma'u'l-Bayān*, 76  
 Ma'mūnū'r-Rashid, 102  
 Manāt, 109  
*Man lā Yahduru-hu'l-Faqīh*, 6, 15-16  
 (Abū Ja'far) al-Mansūr ad-Dawā-nīqī, 102  
 Maqām Ibrāhim, 124  
*Maqāṭalu'l-Tālibiyān*, 101  
 Massignon, L., 1, 128  
 Mecca, 117  
 Medina, 117, 124  
 Michael (Mikā'il), 53, 83, 90  
 Miller, W. M., 4  
 Miqdād, 119  
 Miqdādī Fāḍil, 4  
 Mīrsād, 73  
 Moses, 41, 47, 48, 63, 93  
 Mu'āwiya, 124  
 Mudar, 68  
 Mufaddal b. 'Umar, 88n  
 Mufid, Shaykh, 5, 28n, 29n, 30n, 32n, 36n, 38n, 44n, 45n, 72n, 78n, 82n, 83n

**Muhammad**, the Prophet, 47, 48, 49, 53, 55, 59, 66, 75, 85, 86, 87, 93, 106, 108, 112, 113, 118, 120, 121, 122, 125

**Muhammad** al-Bāqir (5th Imām), 41, 55, 102, 113n, 115, 124, 125  
 — at-Taqī (9th Imām), 58, 102, 124  
 — al-Qā'im (12th Imām), 95, 98, 102, 111  
 (Abū Ja'far) — b. 'Ali al-Aswad, 9n, 10  
 (Abū Ja'far) — b. 'Ali Ibn Bābawayhi, see Ibn Bābawayhi.  
 — ibnū'l-Hanafīya, 114  
 — ibnū'l-Murtaḍā (Muhsini Fayd), 6n  
 — b. Hasan b. 'Ali al-Hurr al-Āmilī, 6n  
 (Abū 'Abdī'l-lāh) — b. Muham-mad b. an-Nu'mān, 11  
 (Abū Zakariyā') — b. Sulaymān al-Hamrānī, 11  
 — Bāqir b. Hājjī Zaynu'l-Ābidīn al-Mūsawi al-Khwānsārī, 7  
 — Bāqiri Majlisi, see Majlisi.  
 "Muhammads, the Three", 6  
**Muhsini Fayd**, Mullā, 6n, 85n  
**Mukhtasaru'l-Āthār** (Qādī Nu'mān), 110n  
**Munkar**, 62n  
**Muntahā'l-Maqāl**, 7  
**al-Muqni' fi'l-Fiqh**, 15 (No. 14)  
**al-Murshid** (periodical of Baghdad), 5  
**Mūsī** b. 'Imrān, 117  
**Mūsā al-Kāzim** (7th Imām), 40, 56, 102, 104  
 al-Mu'tamid (Caliph), 102  
 al-Mu'tasim (Caliph), 102  
 al-Mutawakkil (Caliph), 102  
  
**an-Nāfi'** *Yawmī'l-Hashr* (Miqdādī Fādil), 4, 99n  
 Nājāshī, 7, 8, 9, 10, 17  
 Nakīr, 62n  
 Naṣr, 109  
 Nawawī, 40n  
 Nawbakhti, 5  
 (*Kitābu'n-*)*Nīkāh*, 17 (No. 17)  
 Noah, 47, 48, 93, (Ark) 96, 112n, 114, 115  
 Nöldke, Th., 8, 115  
 Nu'mān, Qādī, 17, 22-23, 61, 110n  
**an-Nuṣūṣ** 'alā'l-*a'immati'l-Ithnā 'Ashar, 16 (No. 16)  
  
 Pillar (Rukn), 124  
 Pond, see Kawthar, 123*

**Qisasu'l-'Ulamā'**, 7, 8  
 Qummī, see Ibn Bābawayhi.  
 (Banū) Qurayṣa, 86

Rabi'a (tribe), 68  
 Rābi'a al-Baṣrī, 79  
 Rahm (a pass), 74  
 Rāmpūr State Library, 5  
**Rawḍātu'l-Jannāt** (Khwānsārī), 7, 8, 9, 10  
 Rayy, 9  
 ar-Rāzī, Abū Ḥātim, 93n  
**Rijāl**, *Kutubu'r-*, 7, 9n  
 Rukn, 124  
 Ruknu'd-Dawla (Buwayhid), 10

**Şadūq**, Shaykh, see Ibn Bābawayhi.  
 Sahl b. Mālik al-Fazārī, 88n  
 (*Kitābu's-*)*Sahw*, 14 (No. 7)  
 Sa'id b. Jubayr, 113n  
 Salāt (a pass), 74  
 Salmānī Fārisī, 119  
 San'a, 66  
 Sēbōē, Sēbūyeh, 8  
 Seth, 112n  
 Shahrestāni, 3  
 Shi'rā, 109  
 Sinān b. Anās an-Nakha'i, 102  
**Sirāju'l-Hudā'l-Munīr** (Tāhir Say-fu'd-Dīn), 97n  
 Sirāt, 71  
 Sprenger, A., 7  
 Strothmann, R., 1, 8  
 Sulaym b. Qays al-Hilālī, 118, 124, 125  
 Sulaymān, Shaykh, 10

**Tahdhību'l-Ahkām** (Tūsī), 6  
 Tāhir Sayfu'd-dīn, Sardār Sayyid-nā, 97n  
**Tashīhu'l-I'tiqādāt** (Shaykh Mufid), 5, 12  
**Tawhīd**, 13 (No. 4), 128  
 Thamūd (tribe), 39  
**Thawābu'l-A'māl**, 14 (No. 5)  
 Torah, 41  
**Tūsī**, Muhammad b. Hasan, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10  
 Tusy, see Tūsī.  
 Tyabji, F. B., 2n

Umm Salīma, 109n  
 'Uyūnu'l-Akhbār (Idrīs b. Hasan), 64n, 97n  
 'Uyūn Akhbāri'r-Ridā', 14 (No. 11)  
 'Uzzā, 109

*Wāfi* (Muhsini Fayd), 6n  
Walid b. 'Abdu'l-Malik, 102  
*Waṣā'il* (al-Hurr al-Āmili), 6n  
Wensinck, A. J., 2, 40  
Yaghūth, 109

Yahyā (John), 51  
al-Yasa', 113n  
Ya'ūq, 109  
Zurāra, 36, 104

## D. TECHNICAL TERMS

*N.B.—In addition to strictly technical terms and expressions, I have also included in this index several words and phrases which, it is hoped, will be of use to the general student and of interest to lexicographers and students of literature.*

<p>abda'a, 49 'adl, 70 ahad (<i>see wāhid</i>), 25, 26 ahād (<i>hadīth</i>), 49n ahlul-bayt (= qā'imū-nā), 51 _____, 97n ahl—     u'l-bid'a, 101; u'l-juhūd, u'l-kufr, u'sh-shakk, u'sh-shirk, 68; u't-tawhīd, 68, 79 al-ahwā'u'l-maqilla, 101 akhbār (mufaṣṣira, mujmala), 116 _____, 118 al-ākhira, 81 āl Muhammad, 114 'Alawīya, 113 'ālim, 25 'ālim, 25, 30 'ām, 122 amin, <i>pl.</i> umanā', 79 amr, 26, (<i>command</i>) 28, 73, 82 'aqaba, 72-74 'aqabāt maḥshar, 72n 'aqlu'l-awwal, 43n 'arad, 26 arāda (<i>he intends</i>), 33 A'rāf, 71 arīka, <i>pl.</i> arā'ik, 79 'arsh, 46; (= 'ilm) 46; (<i>fourth created thing</i>) 46n; (= al-bābu'l-bātin) 46n; (= sovereignty, kingdom) 47n; 48n, 87, 91 aṣḥābu'l-kahf, 64 aṣḥābu'sh-sharā'i, 93 'asl, 117 aw, (<i>explained</i>) 89 'ayba, 96 ayd, 28 'aziz, 25, 30  bāb, -awayhi, 8n, 9n _____, 96 al-bābu'z-zāhir, al-bābu'l-bātin, 46n bad', 42 bādinjān, 117 baqā', 49 barā'a, 114, 116 </p>	<p>barzakh, 76n basir, 25, 30 ba'th, 66 bātin, 93n, 123 Baytu'l-izza, 83n al-Baytu'l-Ma'mūr, 83, 84n (ahlu'l)-bid'a, 101 (dhū) bid'a, 112  <i>creatio ex nihilo</i> (ibdā'), 49n  daffatayn, 85 dalīl, 96 dallasa, tadrīs, mudallas, 27 danās, 100 daraja, 50 daraka, 50 dāru'l-baqā', 73, 78 dharr, 94 dhikr (= lawh), 44n dhurriya, 94n didd, 26 di'f, 88n dīn (= wajh), 27 dunyā, 81  fadl, tafaḍḍul, 70 fā'il, 30 fanā', 49 fard, 73 farīda, <i>pl.</i> farā'iḍ, 105 fitra, 38, 39  ghadab (Allāh), 28 ghā'ib, 96 ghālī', <i>pl.</i> ghulāt, 100, 104 ghanī, 25 ghassāq, 80 ghufrān, 67 ghuluww, 100 al-ghurru'l-muḥejjalūn, 87n  habba, lam yuhibba, 33 haddu'l-ibṭāl, 26n haddu't-tashbih, 26n ḥadīth ahād, 49n </p>
---	--

hakim, 25, 30  
 hāl, *pl.* ahwāl, 100  
 haqīqatu'l-ma'ād, 77  
 haraka, 26  
 Harūriya, 101  
 al-hawā', 46n, 51  
 Hawd, 66, 67, 123  
 hāwiya, 50, 51  
 hayy, 25, 30  
 hazi'a, istihzā' (Allah), 29  
 hazr, 166  
 hidāya, 38, 39  
 hifz, 120  
 hisāb, 74  
 hisbān 103  
 hitṭa, 96  
 hujja, 72, 89-92, 95, 97, 98, 113  
 hulūl, 65n-66n, 105  
 ibāha, 116  
 ibdā' (*creatio ex nihilo*), 42n, 49n  
 ilāh, 26  
 'ilm (*distinguished from khalq*),  
     32n; (= kursī), 45; (= 'arsh), 46  
 imām, 99n, 106, 106n  
 Imāmat, 93n, 107  
 īmān, 51, 96, 123  
 imratun, 111  
 inbi'āth, 105n  
 intībā', 105  
 irāda, 33  
 'iṣma, 99-100  
 ismu'l-Lāhi'l-akbar, 105  
 istawā, *see* sawā.  
 istitā'a, mustaṭī', 40  
 'isyān, 100  
 jabr, 32  
 jadal, 43-44  
 Jahanñam, 77n  
 jahl, 100  
 Janna, 77  
 Jannatu'l-Khuld, 81  
 janb, 27  
 jār, jāra, 88n, 116  
 jawhar, 26  
 jism, 26  
 juhūd, ahlu'l-, 68  
 junūdun mujannada, 50  
 kabīra, *pl.* kabā'ir, 67, 100  
 kāfir, *pl.* kuffār, 109  
 kalām, 44, 84  
 kalām, ashābu'l-, 43  
 khabar, 128  
 khabīr, 26  
 khāda'a, mukhāda'a (Allah), 29  
 khāfi, 98  
 khalīfa, 98  
 khalifatu'r-Raḥmān, 95, 96  
 khāliq, 26  
 khallāq, 30  
 khalq, 26, 42n; *dis. from 'ilm*, 32n;  
     43n; *dis. from ibdā'*, 49n  
 khalq taqdir, — takwīn, 32  
 kharūbiya, 118  
 khāss, 122  
 khaṭā', 96  
 khātamīya, 94n  
 khatt, 26  
 khaylūla, 103  
 khiffa, 26  
 khūmus, 114  
 khushub musannada, 120n  
 kitāban mu'ajjalān, 34  
 kufr, 96, 108; *see* kāfir.  
 kufr, ahlu'l-, 68  
 Kursī (*dis. from 'arsh*), 45, 45n;  
     (= al-bābu'z-zāhir), 46n  
 kushifa 'an sāqīn, 27n  
 laṭīf, 26  
 lawh, 44  
 al-Lawhū'l-Mahfūz, 41n  
 Laylatu'l-Qadr, 83  
 Logos, 93n  
 mabda', 41  
 mablagh, 85  
 maghmūr, 98  
 mahbat, 96n  
 mahdī, 98, 108  
 mahjūb (*in Qur. 83, 15*), 28  
 mahshar, 72  
 mahzūr, 44  
 makān, 26  
 makhlūqa (af'āl), 31-32; *see* khalq.  
 makr (Allah), 29  
 malak, *pl.* malā'ika, 89-92  
 malakūt, 53  
 mālik (*of Hell*), 81  
 mansūkh, 119, 122  
 ma'rifa, 95  
 mashhūr, 98  
 mashī'a, 33  
 ma'sūm, 91, 100; *see* 'iṣma.  
 mawadda, 113n; *see* walāya.  
 mawāzin, 74  
 mawḍū', 26  
 mawt, 53  
 mazlūm, 107  
 mihrāb, 118  
 mirā', 43-44  
 mīthāq, 94, 94n, 95n

mu'ālij, 117  
 mubdi', 43n; *see ibdā'*.  
 mudallas, 27  
 mudmar, 116  
 al-Mufawwida, 100, 104  
 muharram, 44  
 muhādath, 31  
 muhākam, 119, 122  
 mujannada, 50  
 mu'jiza, 96  
 mukhālīf as-sarb, 40  
 mukhtara', 26  
 al-mu'min al-musrif 'alā nafsi-hi, 54  
 munāfiq, 112, 120  
 al-Muntazar, 98  
 muqtaṣid, 115  
 murid, 30  
 musā'ala, 60  
 mushrik, 26, 109  
 mushriqa, 28  
 musrif, 54  
 mustarāh bi'l-mawt, mustarih —, 57  
 mutakallim, 30  
 mutashābih, 120, 122  
  
**nabi**, *pl. anbiyā'*, 68, 74, 89–92; *dis. from* rasūl, 92n; 93, 99  
**nādira** (*in Qur. 75, 22–23*), 28  
**nafs** (= *inmost secrets*), 29; (= *revenge*), 29; (= *soul*), 48–53; nafs ammāra, 49n; 53n; — law-wāma, 49n; — mārdiya, 49n; — mulhima (*or mārdiya*), 49n; nufūs muqaddasa, mutaharra, 49; — muṭma'inna, 49n; — rādiya, 49n  
 nahy, 73, 82  
 najib, *pl. nujabā'*, 43  
 naml, 94n  
 naqṣ, 100  
 an-Nār, 77  
 nāsikh, 119, 122  
 nasiya, nisyān (Allah), 29  
 nātiq, 93n  
 nazīr, 26  
 nāzira (*in Qur. 75, 22–23*), 28  
 nidd, *pl. andād*, 26, 42, 109  
**nubuwwa**, 92n, 107  
 nūr, 46n  
 nushūr, 103  
 nuzūlu'l-wahy, 82  
  
 qabda, 28  
**qadā'**; qadar, 36, 37; qadr, *dis. from*, 38n

Qadariya, 101n  
 qadīm, 25, 30  
 qādir, 25, 30  
 qadr, *see qadā'*, qadar.  
**Qā'im**, 98, 108  
 al-Qā'im bi-amri'l-Lāh, 95, 124  
 qā'imū-nā, 51  
 qalam, 44, 46n  
 qalb, 123  
 qassāṣūn), 112  
 qayyūm, 25, 30  
 qiyāmatu'l-qiyāmāt, 77n  
 quddūs, 25  
 quib, —  
 quwwa, —

rādi, 30  
 radiya, lam ya. da, 33  
 rāfiq, rawāfiq, 3  
 raj'a, 62, 65  
 ramad, 108  
**rasūl**, *pl. rusul*, 74, 89–92; *dis. from* nabi, 92n; 99  
 rāwi, 87  
 rāziq, 30  
 ri'a', 112  
 ridā' (Allah), 28  
 rūh (*spirit*), 27, 48–53; rūhu'l-Imān, — mudraj, — qudus, — quwwa, — shahwa, 52  
 ruqya, *pl. ruqān*, 37

sā'a, 76  
 sabil, 96; — Allah (= 'Alī and Imāms), 106  
 sadaqa, 113, 118  
 sādāt, 113n  
 saghira, *pl. saghā'ir*, 67, 100  
**Şāhibu'z-Zamān**, 95  
 sakhiya (Allah), 29  
 sākhīt, 30  
 sakīna, 99  
**salāt**, of God (= *mercy*), — of angels (= *asking pardon*), — of men (= *prayer*), 29  
 samad, 26  
 şamī', 25, 30  
 sawā, istawā, 46n  
 sayyid, 91  
 shā'a, 33  
 shafā'a, 67  
 shafī', 68  
 shakk, 103; ahlu'sh-, 68  
 sharik, 26  
 shay', 26, 95  
 shāyi', 30  
 shī'a, 89

shirk, 112; *ahlu'sh-*, 68  
 sifāh, 113  
 șifāt (dhāt, af'āl), 30  
 șirāt, 71; (= imāms), 72  
 sīth, 26  
 sukūn, 26  
 șūra, 26  
 tabāraka, 26  
 țabīb, 117, 118  
 tabyīn, 65  
 tadāwā, 118  
 tadrīs, 27n  
 tafwīd, 32, 100, 104  
 tajallī, 105;  
     shuhūd, 105      97, 98,  
 taklīf, 31; m  
 talā, yatlū (ع)  
 tanāsukh, 61  
 tanzih, 28n  
 tanzil, 93n  
 tāqa, 31  
 taqdis, 91  
 taqīya, 110, 110n, 118  
 taqwā, 51  
 tasbih, 91  
 tashbih, 26n  
 tawakkul, 51  
 tawba, 67, 68  
 tawhīd, 25, 94n; *ahlu't-*, 68  
 ta'wil, 93n, 123, 128  
 thiqa, 8  
 thiql, 26  
 țibb, 117  
 tuhma, 103  
 șūlū'l-amr, 96  
 ummu'l-kitāb, 41

*visio beatifica*, 105  
 wa'd, 68  
 wahhāb, 30  
 wāhid, *dis. from ahad*, 25n; 30  
 wahman, 120  
 wa'id, 68  
 wajh (= dīn), 27  
 walāya, 57, 67n, 72; (*a pass*), 73;  
     94n, 98, 96n; *dis. from wilāya*,  
     97n; 113n; 114  
 wali, *pl. awliyā'*, 78, 96, 105, 110  
 waṣī, *pl. awṣīyā'*, 68, 71, 74, 75, 92,  
     92n, 93, 112, 123

zāhir, 97, 123  
 zakāt, 114  
 zalal, 96  
 zālim(ūn), 105 sqq., 115  
 zamān, 26  
 zaqqūm, 80  
 zihār, 118  
 zill, azilla, 51  
 — min al-ghamām (*in Qur. 2,*  
     206), 28  
 zindiq, 43, 128  
 zulm, zālim, 107

298

*Shia Religion*  
 Mohanlal Dara

S A

Published by A. A. A. Fyzee for the Islamic Research Association,  
 Bombay, and Printed by G. E. Bingham, Baptist Mission Press,  
 41A Lower Circular Road, Calcutta.

*Shia Religion*

S A  
 11  
 15

Central Archaeological Library,  
NEW DELHI.

2528

Call No. 291.1  
Muh/F 73

Author—Muhammad. B.

Title—A-SHI'ITE  
Creed.

*"A book that is shut is but a block"*

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY  
GOVT. OF INDIA  
Department of Archaeology  
NEW DELHI.

Please help us to keep the book  
clean and moving.